

THE  
STRATAGEMS  
OF  
WAR:  
OR,

A Collection of the most  
celebrated Practices and wise  
Sayings of the Great Generals  
in former Ages.

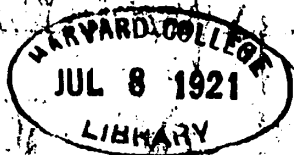
Written by *Sextus Julius Fronti-  
nus*, one of the Roman Consuls.

Now English'd, and Enlarged with a  
new Collection of the most noted  
Stratagems and brave Exploits of  
famous and modern Generals; and with a  
short Account of the Weapons offensive and  
defensive, and Engines commonly used in  
War, with their Usefulness and Deficiency.

By M. D. A. B. D.

Licensed July 28. 1685. Ro. L'Estrange.

LONDON, Printed for S. Heyrick, J. Place, and  
R. Sare, at Grays-Inn Gate, and Furnivals-  
Inn Gate in Holborn. 1686.



---

---

THE  
PREFACE

OF

*Sextus Julius Frontinus,*

TO HIS

First three Books of the  
*Stratagems of W A R.*

HAVING undertaken,  
amongst some other Lo-  
vers and Encou-  
ragers of the Art of  
War, to prescribe and  
publish the Rules of that ex-  
cellent Knowledge: I conceive

*He writ a  
Book of the  
Art of War.*

A 2

that

*The Preface of*

that I have sufficiently accomplish'd my Design according to my Ability: but to this Work I judge also that I ought to annex the subtil Practices of great Captains, which the *Greeks* in one Word stile *στρατηματικῶν* or Stratagems, and to gather them together in short and compendious Relations; for by this means Leaders may be furnish'd with the Examples of Advice, Prudence and Conduct, which may encourage their Invention, and direct them to the Imitation of the same Exploits: and it will undoubtedly prevent their distrust of their own Contrivances,

*Sextus Julius Frontinus.*

ces, when they have approved Examples before their eyes to spur on their Resolutions. Now I am not ignorant, and cannot deny that the Historians have also comprehended in their Writings the same Passages, and have delivered to us all the most remarkable Examples; but in my Judgment, we ought in this case to consult the Conveniency of such as are reduced to the Necessity of Speed and Action: for whom it would be then too tedious to run over all the things which are scatter'd here and there in the large Volumes of Histories. And it usually happens, that

A 3                      such

## *The Preface of*

such as have gathered and taken notice of the most noted things, do lose and forget them, as in a multitude of Matters which confounds the Readers. Our Industry therefore shall here endeavour to exhibit and lay down that which is required according to expectation as exactly as the things will suffer, for to the general Heads which I have gathered, I have prepared fit Advice and Counsel from Examples. And that those things which are differing might be placed in good order for the variety-sake of things, we have reduc'd them to three Books.

In

## *Sextus Julius Frontinus.*

In the first shall be the Examples which belong to a Battel not yet begun.

In the second shall be the Examples which relate to a Fight, and the concluding of a Peace.

The third contains the Stratagems teaching how to begin, carry on, and raise a Siege.

Now under these general Heads I have placed certain Questions or Propositions, as so many Species relating to them; nevertheless, I may with Reason crave Pardon for this Work from him that shall find me not so curious and exact as to set down every Example;



*The Preface of*

ple ; for, Who is there able and sufficient to reckon up all the Passages and Stories which are delivered to us in *Greek and Latin*? Therefore I have purposely omitted many things, which such as have read over the Books of others who have undertaken the same things, may understand to have been done not without good cause. But it will be no hard matter to reduce every thing to its own Species; for as I have undertaken this Work as well as others, not so much for my own Commendation as for the Benefit of other Men, I shall think my self assisted in my  
pur-

*Sextus Julius Frontinus.*

purpose by those who can add to it, but in no wise disgrac'd. If there be any delighted with the perusal of these Stories, let them remember the *σεατηματα* & *σεατηματα*, the noble Actions of former Generals, and their cunning Policies and Stratagems, that they may be able to discern and distinguish the like Deeds; for all things that are performed by a Leader, in a provident, useful, courageous, and a magnificent manner, may be stiled generally *σεατηματα*, but the *σεατηματα*, or Stratagems, are more particular Deeds. The nature of them consists  
in

*The Preface of, &c.*

in that Art and Subtilty used in defending our selves from an Enemy, or in overcoming him; concerning which things there have been remarkable Consequences of excellent Sayings: therefore we have added to the Examples of Actions some noble Expressions. Now the things that are to be noted by a General before a Battel, may be reduced to these Heads.

THE

---

---

THE  
INDEX  
OF THE  
CHAPTERS.

- Chap. 1. **O**F concealing Counsels.  
Chap. 2. **O**F discovering the Counsels of the Enemies.  
Chap. 3. Of settling the state of War.  
Chap. 4. Of leading an Army through a Country in the Power of the Enemy.  
Chap. 5. Of escaping out of most difficult places.  
Chap. 6. Of Ambushes laid in the way.  
Chap. 7. How those things which are wanting to us may be dissembled or concealed, and the use other ways supplied.  
Chap. 8. Of streightning an Enemy.  
Chap.

Chap. 9. *Of pacifying the Disorders and Seditions of Souldiers.*

Chap. 10. *How to give a check to the unseasonable Impatience of fighting.*

Chap. 11. *How to encourage an Army to the Battel.*

Chap. 12. *How to expell the Fears which Souldiers may have conceived from ill Omens.*

THE

( I )

---

THE FIRST BOOK  
Of the  
Stratagems of W A R  
O F  
*Sextus Julius Frontinus,*  
a ROMAN Consul.

---

CHAP. I.  
*Of Concealing Counsels.*

Example. 1.

**M**ARCUS Porcius Cato, having a Jealousie that the Cities of Spain which he had conquered would in time rebell, out of a Confidence that they had in the strength of their Walls, writ to each of them that they should overthrow their Fortifications, and threatned them with War, if they did not immediately obey his Orders. The Letters he caused to be delivered to all the Cities in one day; which made every one of them believe, that this Command was given to them alone: for if they could have had all time to know that they were

B all

## The Stratagems of War.

all threatened and commanded the same thing, they would have united together, and resisted the General's Orders.

2. When *Himilco*, the *Carthaginian* Captain, resolved to land in *Sicily* unexpected, he never declar'd whither he was sailing, but delivered to all the Masters of his Navy sealed Letters, wherein was written the place which he was designed for; but commanded that no man should read them, unless by the violence of a Storm they were driven from the sight of the Admiral's Ship which carried him.

3. When *C. Lælius* went as an Ambassadour to King *Syphax*, he took along with him some of the Colonels and Captains of the Army in the Garb of Slaves and Servants, with an Intention to serve as Spies: amongst whom, when *L. Statorius*, who had very often been in the same Camp, seem'd to be known by some of the Enemies, he beat him with his Staff, and corrected him as his Servant, only to conceal from them his Condition.

4. *Tarquinius Superbus*, the Father, resolving to have the chief of the *Gabians* destroyed, would not intrust this Secret with any Person, and answered nothing to his Son's Messenger that was sent to him, but with his Rod struck off before him the heads of the highest Poppies, as he was then by chance walking in his Garden. The Messenger, at his return without a verbal Answer, told the young *Tarquinius* what he observ'd that his Father did. He understood that he was to deal in the same manner with the most noted Persons of his Government.

5. *C. Caesar* being in *Egypt*, suspected the *Egyptians* Faith; but to make them believe that he trusted them, he visited their chief City and Works, frequented their merry Feasts, seem'd to be much de-

## The Stratagems of War.

delighted with the conveniency of the Places, and to imitate the Customs and manner of living of the Citizens of *Alexandria*: but during all this Dissimulation, he was providing his Succours and Troops to take possession of the Kingdom of *Egypt*.

6. When *Ventidius*, in the *Parthian* War, march'd against King *Pacorus*, and understood that a certain *Pharneus* of *Cyrrhestre* in *Syria*, who was amongst his Auxiliaries, did give Intelligence to the *Parthian* Army whatsoever was acted and resolved in the *Roman* Camp, he took occasion to make an advantage of the Traitor's Perfidiousness; for that which he most desired to be done he pretended that he was afraid that it should happen, and that which he feared would come to pass, he seem'd to wish for. Therefore, fearing that the *Parthians* would pass over the River *Euphrates* to fight him, before his Legions could come up to him out of *Cappadocia*, from the other side of Mount *Taurus*, he solicited the Traytor to a double Treachery, to persuade the *Parthians* to carry their Army over that part of *Euphrates* that bears the Name of *Zeugma*, where the River, leaving its strait Channel, turns aside; for if they came the nearer way, he assured them that *Ventidius* would make use of the Hills to defend himself and Army from the *Parthian* Arrows; but, that he was very much afraid if they took the plain and open Fields. This Information oblig'd them to march the under way, and to bring their Army round about. They spent above forty days in siding along the larger Banks, in building of laborious Bridges, and in the carriage of their warlike Instruments. In the mean space *Ventidius* had time to call together his Troops; and before the *Parthians* were in sight they had been with him three days. By this means he over-

came the *Parthians* in Battel, and kill'd their King *Pacorus*.

7. When *Pompey* had begun to draw a Trench to compass in *Mithridates* with his Army, he prepared himself to fly the next day: but better to conceal this Design from the *Romans*, he caused his men to forage far and near, and to the places adjoining to the Enemies Camp, and appointed a Conference the next day with several of *Pompey's* men, and commanded more fires to be made every where in his Trenches; but in the second Watch of the Night he led out his whole Army along by the Enemies Camp, and escaped.

8. The Emperour *Cesar Domitianus Augustus*, surnamed *Germanicus*, having an intent to surprize the *Germans* that had took up Arms, and knowing that they would make a greater Preparation if they knew of the coming of so great a Captain, he pretended, the Taxation, or the mustering of the *Gauls*, to be the cause of his Departure. In this manner he overcame them by an unexpected War, tamed the fierceness of barbarous Nations, and provided for the preservation and safety of the *Roman Provinces*.

9. When *Claudius Nero* desired to cut in pieces the Army of *Asdrubal* before he could joyn with his Brother *Hannibal*, he endeavour'd by hasty Marches to unite with the other Consul *Livius Salinator*, who was appointed to oppose *Asdrubal*, because he mistrusted the Forces that were under his Command: yet would not he suffer *Hannibal*, whom he was to oppose, to have any Intelligence of his Departure. For that purpose, he chose ten thousand of the stoutest Soldiers of his Army, and commanded his Lieutenants, whom he left behind, that they should place the same Sentinels and Watches every

every where, keep the same Fires burning, and observe the same order in the Camp as when he was present, that *Hannibal* might not suspect any thing, nor attempt upon the small number that was left behind: for his part, he went by secret ways into *Umbria*, now called *Spoletto*, and joyn'd himself to his Partner, but gave Order that the Camp might not be enlarged, that *Asdrubal* might not know of his coming, nor refuse to fight the Forces of both Consuls. By this means he overcame him and his Army, and with his increased Troops having overpowered him unawares, returned back to wait upon the motions of *Hannibal*, before he could have any knowledge of the Victory. Thus he dealt with two of the most subtle Generals of the *Carthaginians*; the one he overcame by concealing his purpose, the other by his Valour he destroyed.

10. *Themistocles*, the *Athenian* Captain, advised his Citizens to build up with all speed the Walls which the *Spartans* had commanded to be pull'd down: and to the *Lacedemonian* Ambassadors which were sent to interrupt the Work, he answered, That he would go himself to *Sparta*, to give an account of this proceeding, and satisfy the Citizens. At his Arrival he pretended himself sick, and by that means spun out some time; at last, when he perceived that they suspected, and understood his delays, he affirmed to them, that they had heard false Reports, and desired them to send some of their chief men who might give them a true Account of the Fortifications of *Athens*. And at the same time he writ to his Citizens privately to detain such as should come untill their Works were finished, that he might then declare to the *Lacedemonians* that *Athens* was fortified, and that their Citizens should not be returned back, unless

## 6      *The Stratagems of War.*

they gave him liberty to be gone; which the *Lacedæmonians* easily granted, for fear that one mans Death should be punished with the loss of many.

11. *L. Furius*, having brought his Army into a very inconvenient place, he resolved to conceal the trouble of his Mind, for fear of giving an Apprehension to others; and at the same time gave Orders to his Army to march aside a little, as if he had intended only to take a compass about, and fall upon the Enemy. In this manner he brought out his Army, ignorant both of the Danger and of the Intent of his Orders, into a safer Post.

12. When *Metellus Pius* was asked in *Spain* what he would do the next day, he answered, That if his Waistcoat could tell it, he would immediately cast it into the fire.

13. *M. Licinius Crassus* gave this Answer to one that asked him at what time he would remove his Camp; Art thou afraid that thou shalt not hear the Sound of the Trumpet, or the Signal.

## CHAP. II.

### *Of discovering the Counsels of the Enemies.*

#### Example 1.

**S***cipio Africanus*, taking an occasion to send an Embally to King *Syphax* with *Lælius*, he dispatched some choice Collonels and Captains in the habit of Servants and Attendants, to spy out the strength of the Enemy. And that they might more freely take a view of the Camp, they let loose a Horse

## *The Stratagems of War.*      7

a Horse for this purpose, which they followed, and by this means went round the greatest part of their Fortifications; of which, when they had given an Account to *Scipio*, he made an end of that War, by setting Fire to their Camp.

2. *Q. Fabius Maximus*, in the *Hetrurian* War, when yet the *Roman* Captains were not well acquainted with the wisest ways of discovering, ordered his Brother *Fabius Cæso*, well learned in the *Hetrurian* Language, to take that Garb, and to go into the Forest of *Cimini*, unknown before to the *Roman* Souldiers; in which Embassy he behaved himself with so much Prudence and Industry, that he drew the *Umbri Camertes*, a considerable People, who were not averse to the *Roman* Commonwealth, to joyn in Society and League with them.

3. When the *Carthaginians* saw that *Alexander's* Power did so wonderfully increase, and that he did threaten *Africa* also, they appointed a subtle Person, one of their Citizens, named *Hamilcar*, of *Rhodes*, to go to the King in the disguise of a banish'd Man, and by all means to insinuate himself into his Acquaintance and Friendship; which when he had obtained, he reveal'd to his Citizens all the Designs and Resolutions of this Conquerour.

4. The same *Carthaginians* sent some of their own Citizens as Ambassadors, to remain a considerable time at *Rome*, that they might understand the purposes of the *Romans*.

5. When *M. Cato* was in *Spain*, and could no other ways come to the knowledge of the Enemies Designs, he ordered three hundred Souldiers to make an Assault upon them in their Post, and to take one of them by force, and carry him into his Camp; who being put to the Torture, revealed all the Secrets of his own People.

6. *C. Marius* the Consul, in the *Cimbrick* and *Ten-tonick* War, sent Letters to the *Gauls* and *Lyguri-ans* to know whether they continued faithful to the *Roman* State: In the beginning he commanded them that they should not unseal nor read what was clos'd up untill a prefixed time. And before that time, he sent to demand the same Letters; which when he found to be unseal'd, he understood that they intended to joyn with the Enemy. There is also another way of Discovery, by which Generals, without any outward help, have been able to foresee things of themselves. For Example;

7. *Æmilius Paulus*, or rather, *L. Æmilius Pa-pus*, Consul in the *Hetrurian* War, being at the head of his Army to lead them into a Plane, saw a far off a great number of Birds rise swifter than ordinary out of a Wood; by that he understood that there was some Ambuscade hid, because the Birds were disturb'd, and because many rose up together; he sent out therefore Scouts, who brought him Intelligence, That ten thousand of the *Helvetians* called *Boii*, were there ready to receive the *Romans*, which News caused him to march with his Legions another way than was expected to Attack them.

8. Likewise *Tisamenes* the Son of *Orestes*, understanding that the Enemy held the top of a Mountain which was strong by Situation; he sent some to inquire out the Truth, who brought word, that it was no such thing as he imagin'd: but proceeding on in his way, he saw a vast number of Birds to fly together out of that Mountain, that would not pitch; by them he perceived that the Enemies Troops were there hid; he led therefore his Army another way, and escaped the Ambushes that were laid for him.

9. Af-

9. *Asdrubal*, the Brother of *Hannibal*, understood too late, that *Livie's* Army and *Nero's* were joyned together, though they endeavoured to conceal it by lodging together in the same Camp, for he saw their Horses look thin with the Journey, and took notice of the Bodies of them bearing the colour of the High-ways through which they had travelled.

## CHAP. III.

## Of settling or chusing the state of War.

## Example 1.

A *Alexander* of *Macedon*, having a lusty Army of stout men to follow him, did always chuse to fight his Enemy in a pitch'd Battel.

2. *C. Cesar*, in the Civil War, had an Army of old Souldiers, but he knew that his Enemies were but raw and unexperienced; he endeavoured therefore always to give the Battel.

3. *Fabius Maximus*, being General against *Hannibal*, who was grown insolent and proud with the Successes of the former Fights, resolv'd to avoid the doubtful Hazards of a Battel, and only to defend his Country. He deserved therefore the Name and Renown thereby of a wise General.

4. They of *Byzantium* shun'd all occasions of fighting with King *Philip's* Army, and forsook also their Borders to shelter themselves within the Walls of their City; which caus'd the *Macedonians*, impatient of the Delays of a Siege, to depart away.

B 5

5. Hus-

5. *Hasdrubal* the Son of *Gisgon*, commanded an Army in *Spain* in the second *Punic* War: when *Scipio* prest upon him, he disperst his Army, and sent them to the Cities: by this means *Scipio* was forced to lead away also his Army into their Winter Quarters, that he might not divide his by the Siege of many Towns at once.

6. When *Xerxes* was entring into *Greece* with his Army, *Themistocles* judged that the *Athenians* were not able to fight him by Land, nor to defend their Borders, nor to maintain their Walls; he advis'd them therefore to transport their Wives and Children to *Træzenum* and other Cities, to forsake their Town, betake themselves to their Ships, and resolve to fight by Sea.

7. This was the same Advice that *Pericles* gave to the same City in War against the *Lacedæmonians*.

8. When *Hannibal* was in *Italy*, *Scipio* sailed over with his Army into *Africa*, and compell'd the *Carthaginians* to call back *Hannibal*: by this means he removed the Seat of War from his own Country into the Enemies Borders.

9. The *Lacedæmonians* having taken and fortified a Castle of the *Athenians*, called *Decelea*, from whence they did much mischief to them, sent their Navy to land, and spoil the *Peloponnesus*: by this means they oblig'd the *Lacedæmonian* Army which was at *Decelea* to be call'd home, to defend their own Country.

10. The Emperour *Cæsar Domitianus Augustus*, when the *German's*, according to their Custom, made sudden Onsets upon the *Romans* out of their Woods and secret Retreats, returning immediately back in safety, in the bottom of their Copses, he set Guards round at 120000. Paces from one another,

ther, and thus alter'd the manner of War, oblig'd the Enemy to surrender themselves when he had deprived them of their Retreats.

## CHAP. IV.

### *Of leading an Army through a Country in the Power of the Enemy.*

#### Example 1.

**Æ** *Milius Papius*, Consul, leading his Army against the *Luceni*, in a narrow Passage where the Navy of *Tarentum* waited in Ambush to discharge upon their Troops a shewre of poisoned Arrows from their Engines, he covered them as they marched on the side of the Navy, with their Captives; for whom the Enemies had so great a respect, that they stop'd their Arrows.

2. *Agefilas* the *Lacedæmonian*, returning out of *Phrygia* loaden with Spoils, was closely pursued by his Enemies, who, taking the advantage of a certain Place, fell upon his Troops, which made him to rank all his Prisoners on both sides of his Army: while the Enemy spared them, the *Lacedæmonians* had time and space to escape out of the danger.

3. The same General, when the *Theban* Army had possessed themselves of the *Streights* through which he was to pass, he turn'd aside, as if he had been to go directly to the City of *Thebes*; which so affrighted the *Thebans*, that they forsook their Stations to defend their Town. This caus'd *Agefilas* to



to return back, and to proceed on the way that he had designed, without any Disturbance.

4. *Nicostratus*, the General of the *Ætolians*, making War against them of *Epirus*, finding that the Passages into that Country were very narrow, made shew as if he intended to assault them in one place, where he left some few of his Souldiers to maintain the Appearance of an Army, whilst he with the rest of his Troops enter'd into the Country by another way where he was least expected.

5. *Autophradates* the *Persian*, marching with his Army into *Pisidia*, found certain straight Passages possessed by the Inhabitants, which made him to dissemble an Unwillingness to pass further, and to resolve to return back: the *Pisidians* believed that he had been in earnest; but he in the night sent a very strong Party to master that place, and the next day he pass'd through with his whole Army.

6. *Philip* King of *Macedonia*, intending to go over into *Greece*, heard that the *Streights* called *Thermopylae* were possessed by the Enemy: at the same time the *Ætolian* Ambassadors, Lords of those *Streights*, came to him to treat about Conditions of Peace. *Philip* secur'd them, and with all speed marched with his Army to the *Thermopylae*, where he found the Guards secure, expecting the return of their Ambassadors. Thus he seiz'd upon those *Streights*, and unexpected past through with his Army.

7. *Iphicrates* the *Athenian* General, fighting against *Anaxibius* the *Lacedamonian* Captain, in the *Hellepont*, about the Town *Abydos*, was forced to pass with his Army through certain places which were guarded by the Enemy; for in one side of the Passage were high and steep Mountains, in the other the Waves of the Sea. He stopt some small time, till  
a day

a day happened to be colder than ordinary, and therefore most fit to conceal his purpose. He chose a select number of his strongest Souldiers, whom he warm'd with Wine and Oyl, commanding them to march along the Sea-shore, and to climb over the steepest Places. Thus he surpris'd the Guards behind unexpected, and mastered them.

8. When *Cn. Pompeius* could not well pass his Army over a River because of the Enemies Troops, he often brought forth his Army out of their Trenches, and as often led them in again, that he might persuade the Enemy that the *Romans* could find no way to march forwards. Then upon a sudden he gave an Onset, and gain'd the Passage.

9. When *Porus* the *Indian* King stop'd *Alexander* the *Macedonian*, with his Army, from passing the River *Hydaspes*, he commanded his *Greek* Troops to run against the Stream: and when by that Proceeding *Porus* was brought to take most heed and care of the other side of the River, on a sudden he past over with his Army a little higher than was expected. The same *Alexander*, being hinder'd in the Passage of another River by the Enemy, he commanded that several Troops of Horse should appear in several places on the sides of the Water, and offer to pass over. By that means he kept the Enemy employed, and expecting his motion there, whilst he got into his Power an Island at a distance, first with a small Guard, after with a greater, and from thence he commanded them to pass over to the other side of the River. When all the Enemies were marching to encounter and destroy this small Party, he had the Ford at liberty to get over with all his Army to joyn with his men on the other side.

10. *Xenophon* in his March found that the *Armenians* stood on the other side of a River to impede his Passage; he therefore commanded his men to seek out two Fords, and when he was opposed by the Enemy at the lower Ford, he returned to the higher; when likewise he was encountred there by the Enemy, he went back to the lower Ford, commanding a Party of his Men to remain there. While therefore the *Armenians* continued to defend the lower Ford, he pass'd over at the higher; but they imagining that all would come down, they were deceived by those that remain'd, for these, when the Ford was at liberty, they got on the other side without hinderance, and became a defence to all the rest of their men whilst they marched thro' the River.

11. *P. Claudius*, Cons. in the first *Punick* War, being not able to pass over with his Army from *Rhegium* to *Messina* in *Sicily*, whilst the *Carthaginians* kept the *Streights*, caused a Report to be spread about, That he could no longer continue in this War, because it was begun without the Consent of the People of *Rome*, and that he would sail with his Fleet back into *Italy* when the *Carthaginians* were departed, who believed that he was really gone; he return'd suddenly, and landed in *Sicily*.

12. When the *Lacedemonian* Generals intended to sail to *Syracuse*, and were afraid of the *Carthaginian* Fleet sent to intercept them, they ordered ten Ships of *Carthage* which they had taken, to sail before, with others drag'd and tied behind and on the sides, as if they had been overcome in Fight; by which Appearance, the *Carthaginians* that waited for them were deceived, and they arrived safe to their Haven.

13. When

13. When King *Philip* could not pass over the *Streights* called *Cyanea*, because of the *Athenian* Fleet which guarded that convenient place, he writ to *Antipater*, one of his Generals, that the Province of *Thracia*, having destroyed the Garrisons that he had left there, was in Rebellion; and therefore that leaving other Business he should follow him; which Letter he caus'd to be intercepted by the Enemy. The *Athenians* judging that they had understood the Secrets of the *Macedonians*, sail'd away with their Fleet; and *Philip*, without resistance, freed these *Streights* from the Enemy. The same King, being hinder'd in his Design upon *Cherronesus*, which was belonging to the *Athenians*, because not only the Ships of *Byzantium*, but also of *Rhodes* and *Chios* were in the Passage, endeavoured to gain their Friendship, by restoring to them the Ships that he had taken, offering to make them Judges and Mediators of the Peace between him and them of *Byzantium*, who were the causes of the War. In this Negotiation he spun out craftily a long time, always adding something to the Articles, that he pretended was wanting; and in the mean while he fitted out his own Fleet, to carry him and his Army on a sudden over the *Streights*, when the Enemy was unprepared to hinder him.

14. *Chabrias* the *Athenian*, not being able to enter into the Haven of *Samos*, because of the Enemies Ships that oppos'd him and guarded the place, commanded a few of his Ships to pass by the Haven, imagining that the Enemies would follow them, which accordingly happened: he by that means got into the Haven with the rest of his Fleet.

## C H A P. V.

*Of escaping out of most difficult places.*

## Example 1.

**Q.** *Sertorius*, being pursued by his Enemies to the side of a River which he was to pass, caused a Bulwark to be cast up in the manner of a half Moon on the Bank of the River, and furnished it with combustible stuff, which he caused to be set on fire: by that means the Enemy was kept off, and he passed over without any hindrance.

2. In the like manner, *Pelopidas* the *Theban*, in the War of *Thessaly*, obtained a safe Passage over a River; for having shut in a large compass of ground within his Camp, he placed upon the Rampires and Bastions round about, forked Stakes, with much combustible matter; and whilst the Enemy was kept off by the Fire he got over to the other side.

3. *Q. Lutatius Catulus*, having received a Repulse from the *Cimbri*, and seeing no hopes of Safety but in the passage of a River whereof the Banks were possessed by the Enemy, marched with his Troops to the next Mountain, as if he had intended there to settle his Camp; but commanded his Men not to lay down their Burdens, nor to loosen their Fardels, and that none should offer to depart from their Ranks or Colours; and that he might better confirm the Enemy in this Persuasion, he ordered some few Tabernacles to be raised in the most conspicuous places, and Fires to be kindled, and that some few of his men should cast up a Ditch, and others should appear to go out to fetch Wood. All which Actions the *Cimbri* conceiving to be done in earnest, chose also a place to pitch their Tents, and sent out seve-

several Parties to provide those things that were needful for their abode: by this means they gave an opportunity to *Catulus*, not only to pass over his Army, but also to streighten the Enemies Camp.

4. When *Cræsus* could not get over a Ford of the River *Halys*, and having neither Ships, nor necessities to build a Bridge, he caused a deep Trench to be drawn in the upper part of the River behind his Camp, and so turn'd the Current of the Water behind him.

5. *Cn. Pompeius*, designing at *Brundisium* to depart out of *Italy*, and transport the War into *Greece*, because *Cæsar* was likely to attempt upon his Troops when they should endeavour to get on Ship-board, caused some streets to be stopt up, in others he made Walls to be builded a-cross, in others he caused Trenches to be drawn, and sharp stakes, hardned in the fire, to be fixed in them, covering them over with Hurdles hid under the Earth which was cast on the top. And some ways that led to the Haven he stopt with Beams laid upon one another very thick. When all this was done, he made shew of a Resolution to defend the Town, by placing some few Archers round the Walls. The rest of his Troops, without noise, he commanded aboard, and when they were all shipped, the Archers likewise, by known ways, hastened after him in small Ships that waited for them in the Haven.

6. *C. Duillius*, *Cons.* enter'd into the Haven of *Syracuse* unadvisedly, for he was shut in by a Chain cross the Entrance; he caused therefore all his Soldiers to weigh down the Stern of his Ships, and when the fore-part was lifted up by the weight behind, he caused the Oars to row that part over the Chain violently, which being done, all the Soldiers

diers returned again to the fore-part to press that down : by this means all the weight of the Ships being got over the Chain, caused them to escape over it.

7. When *Lyfander* the *Lacedæmonian* was besieged with all his Navy in the Haven of *Athens*, being oppressed with the number of his Enemies Ships, he ordered his Souldiers to land secretly on that part of the Shore where the Sea hath the streightest Passage to flow in, and his Ships to be placed upon Wheels, and carried over land to the nearest Port named *Monæcius*, or rather *Munychias*.

8. *Herculeius*, the Lieutenant of *Sertorius* in *Spain*, enter'd with a small Party to march along a narrow way between two steep Mountains; and understanding that a great number of his Enemies were at hand, coming against him, he caused speedily a Ditch to be dig'd a-cross between the two Hills, and a Rampire made with combustible stuff to be set on Fire. Thus, while the Enemy was kept off with the Fire, he escaped.

9. *C. Cæsar*, in the Civil War, leading his Army against *Afranius*, and finding that he was not able to retreat with safety, as he had designed, caused the first and second Battalion secretly to withdraw themselves behind his Army, and to apply themselves to dig a Trench of fifteen foot broad, into which, about Sun-set, he marched with his Army in Battel.

10. *Pericles* the *Athenian*, being driven by the Inhabitants of the *Peloponnesus* into a certain place which was so surrounded with steep Hills that there were but two Passages to escape out, caus'd a Ditch to be dig'd of a very great breadth on one side, as if he had purposed to exclude the Enemy that side, on the other he commanded a way to be made

made as if he had intended there to escape. The Besiegers, never imagining that *Pericles's* Army would offer to escape over the Ditch that he had drawn, resolved all to oppose him in the broad way. But *Pericles*, having cast over his Ditch a Bridge with Planks that he had ready, suddenly commanded over his Party that way where there was no resistance.

11. *Lyfimachus*, one of them who succeeded to the Wealth and Command of *Alexander*, designing to fix his Camp on a high Hill, by the Indiscretion of his Officers was brought into a Valley, where he feared the coming down of his Enemies from the upper Ground; he therefore dig'd three Trenches against them within his Camp, and also round about all the Tents the like number of Ditches: By that means he stop'd the Enemies Passage, and by casting of Bows over the Ditches, covering them over with Turf and Earth, he passed over, gave an Assault to the Enemy, and got up to the higher Ground.

12. *Cn. Fronteiuss Crassus*, going out in *Spain* to plunder the Country, with three thousand men, was surrounded by *Hafdrubal* in a dangerous place. He communicated his Resolution and Purpose only to the first Ranks, and in the beginning of the night, at what time it was least expected, he broke through the Enemies Post.

13. *L. Furius*, having led his Army into a difficult place, he resolved to conceal the trouble of his Mind that the rest might not be afraid, commanding his Men to march a little aside, as if he had intended to assault the Enemy by taking a greater compass about: but by turning his Army round, who knew nothing of the matter, he brought them into safety.

14. *P. Decius* the Tribune, in the *Samnetick War*, persuaded *Cornelius Cossus* the Consul, who was surprised by the Enemy in a dangerous Place, to command a small Party to seize upon a neighbouring Hill, and offered himself to command that Party; for by this means, the Enemy being resolved to oppose this motion, suffered the Consul to escape, but surrounded and besieged *Decius*: but in the Night he also sallied out of those *Streights*. After some Contest, he arrived in Safety with his Souldiers, and joyned the Consuls Army.

15. The same Course was observed under the Command of *Attilius Calatinus*, Cons. by him whose Name is variously written; some call him *Laberius*, some *Q. Cædicius*, most write that he was named *Calpurnius Flamma*. This Captain, finding that his Army was led into such a Valley that on every side the Enemy had taken possession of the higher ground, desired and obtained of the Consul three hundred men, whom he encourag'd by their Valour to save the whole Army. With this Party he marched into the midst of the Valley, and immediately all the Enemies ran down upon them to cut them off: so that while he was busied in a very fierce and long Combate, he gave opportunity and leisure to the Consul to draw off his Army.

16. *L. Minutius*, the Consul, in *Liguria*, having led his Army into a streight place, and every one did yet remember the sad Destruction of the *Romans*, called *Caudine Clades*, commanded the *Numidians*, his Auxiliary Troops, who were despicable in regard of the Deformity of their Persons and of their Horses, to ride up and down about the narrow Passage that led out of the Streights which was defended by the Enemy; first, they fearing to be provok'd to Battel, stood to their Station, and kept their

their Post, but the *Numidians* endeavour'd to cause themselves to be despised, by falling purposely from their Horses, and in playing strange Tricks, as in sport. At this unusual sight, the *Ligurians* began to open their Ranks, and to mind nothing but the seeing of the Play. The *Numidians* perceiving this, drew nearer and nearer; at last clapping the Spurs to their Horses, they broke through the neglected and open Ranks or Stations of their Enemies, and then falling upon the neighbouring Country, forced the *Ligurians* to depart, and defend their Dwellings, and to suffer the *Romans* quietly to march out.

17. *L. Sylla*, in the War of the Confederates, near the City *Esernia* in *Italy*, was surprised in a streight place; therefore he sent to the Enemies Army, commanded by *Duillius*, for a Parley, and began to treat of the Conditions of Peace without any Success; but perceiving the Enemy to be grown more negligent because of the Truce, departed in the night, leaving behind him his Trumpeter, who was to divide the Watches as long as any should remain behind, and at the fourth Watch should follow him. Thus he brought away all his Army, with all their baggage and warlike Instruments, into safety.

18. The same *Sylla*, in the War against *Archelaus*, *Mithridates's* General in *Cappadocia*, was worsted by the multitude of his Enemies in an incommodious place; he therefore propos'd to them Articles of Peace, and obtain'd a time of Truce: by this Diversion of the Enemies Intentions he escap'd out of the danger.

19. *Hasdrubal*, *Hannibal's* Brother, being not able to get out of a Wood, whereof the Passages were stop'd by *Claudius Nero*, began to treat with him, and to promise, that if he might be suffered

to depart, he would leave *Spain*. Afterwards he spent some days in finding fault with the Conditions imposed. In the mean while, by certain narrow Paths which were therefore neglected, he sent away his Souldiers by Parties, and at the last he himself escaped with the rest, that were the completest part of his Army.

20. *Spartacus* marched over a little Trench with which *M. Crassus* had inclosed him in by filling it up in the night with the Bodies of his Captives and of Beasts.

21. The same Person being besieged in Mount *Vesuvius*, escaped over the steepest and most craggy part, which was not therefore guarded, by twisting together some Field Withies, of which he made Chains to slide down; and afterwards he so terrified *Claudius* on another side, that some of his Troops were put to flight by seventy four Fencers.

22. The same *Spartacus* being shut up by *L. Varinus* the Proconsul, fixed Stakes at some little distance from one another, at which he tied dead Bodies, standing upright and clothed, with their Arms, that such as should look at a distance might fancy it to be a Party in Guard, and caused besides Fires to be kindled about his Camp every where. Whilst his Enemy was deceived with this vain Appearance, he led out in the night all his Army peaceably.

23. *Brasidas* the *Lacedaemonian* Captain, was surprised about *Amphipolis* by a great Multitude of *Athenians*, which he was not able to resist; he therefore suffered himself to be shut in by them, that by extenuating their Body in a round Circle, he might break out through some part of their Body where they were thinnest.

24. *Iphicrates*, in *Thracia*, having placed his Camp in a low ground, understood that the Enemy had taken

taken the next Hill, from which a Party was come to cut them off. He commanded his men to make many Fires, and left a few within his Camp in the Night for that purpose. In the mean while he led out his Army, and placed them along the ways on both sides, through which he suffer'd the Enemy to pass, and caught them in the same disadvantageous place in which he was before. Thus he cut off some part of their Rear, and took the rest in the Camp.

25. *Darius*, to hide from the *Scythians* his Departure, left behind him in his Camp the Dogs and the Asses; which while the Enemy heard barking and braying, they thought that *Darius* was yet there.

26. The *Ligurians* deceived the *Romans* with a like Subtilty. In divers places they tied to the Trees wild Bullocks, which being left behind, by their frequent bellowing shewed the appearance of an Army to the Enemy.

27. *Hanno*, being shut in by the Enemy, set on fire a great deal of light and combustible stuff in that place which was fittest for him to sally out: And when he saw the Enemy gone to defend the other Passages, he led his Souldiers through the Flames, advising them to cover their Faces with their Bucklers, and their Legs with their Cloths.

28. *Hannibal*, to escape out of an incommodious and barren place, being pursued by *Fabius Maximus*, in the night tied dry Faggots of Wood to the Horns of Oxen, which he set on Fire, and sent them out; the Flame increasing by the motion of the Beasts, caused them to bellow, and run furiously over the Mountains where they were driven, giving a great Light. The *Romans* that went out first to examine the business, thought it a Prodigy, and a Wonder; afterwards, when they had given a true Account

Account to *Fabi*us, he kept his Men within the Camp for fear of Ambushes. In the mean while *Hannibal* with his Army marched out without resistance.

## CHAP. VI.

### *Of Ambushes laid in the way.*

#### Example 1.

**F***ulvius*, surnamed the Nobler, leading his Army out of *Samnium* against the *Lucani*, understood by some Run-a-ways, that the Enemies would set upon his Rear, which caused him to order his stoutest Legion to march in the Van, and placed in the Rear his Baggage. The Enemies embracing this which was done on purpose, began to plunder the Carriage; but *Fulvius* had appointed five Companies of the forementioned Legion to be in the right side of the way, and five in the left: so that when the Enemy was wholly intent and busie about the Plunder, he shut them in on both sides with his Souldiers drawn up, and cut them in pieces.

2. The same *Fulvius* was pursued close by his Enemy in the Rear, whilst he was marching towards a River near at hand, which was not so great as to hinder his Passage, though the swiftness of the Stream did stop him. On the higher Banks he left one Legion in a secret place, that the Enemy might be more encourag'd to pursue after by the small number, which they would infallibly despise; which

which accordingly happen'd; then the Legion which was placed on purpose came out of the Ambuscado, assaulted and destroyed them.

3. When *Iphicrates* led into *Thracia* a long Army, because of the narrowness of the way, and News was brought to him that the Enemy would assault the Rear, he commanded some Companies to withdraw on both sides, and there to stand, and the rest to proceed on, and hasten speedily their March; but when they passed by, he kept with him every choice Man; so that when the Enemy was busie and scattered about the Prey, and already weary, he came upon them with his well-ordered and fresh Troops, routed them, and took from them all the Plunder.

4. The *Boii*, when the *Romans* were to pass through the Wood called *Litana* or *Latina*, had so cut the Trees that they stood upright, supported by such a small part, that at the least violence they would fall, they being hid in the Borders of the Wood: when therefore their Enemies were enter'd in, they flung down the first, and these falling broke down the next; by this means they cast down a great many upon the *Romans*, and crush'd a considerable Party to pieces.

## CHAP. VII.

*By what means the things that we stand in need of may seem not to be wanting, or the use otherways supplied.*

## Example 1.

**L** *Cacilius Metellus*, having no Ships to carry his Elephants over the Sea, joyned together some Hogheads, and cast Boards over them, upon which he placed his Elephants, and sent them into *Italy* over the *Sicilian* Streights.

2. When *Hamibal* could not oblige his Elephants to march through a deep River, and had neither Ships, nor Boards to build any to carry them over, he commanded the fiercest of these Beasts to be wounded under the Ear by one who should immediately run away, and swim over the Water: by this means it happened, that the Elephant being stirred up to revenge it self upon the Author of its Pain, past over the River, and gave an example for the rest to follow.

3. The *Carthaginian* Captains having a Fleet to prepare, and wanting Tow and Hemp, they shaved the Women of the Country, and with their Hair made Ropes.

4. Those of *Marseilles* and *Rhodes* have done the like.

5. *M. Antonius*, flying from *Mutina*, furnished his Souldiers with the Bark of Trees instead of Bucklers.

6. The Bucklers of *Spartacus* and his Army were made of Withies covered over with Skins or Hides.

7. It

7. It will not be amiss, I conceive, to relate in this place that noble Deed of *Alexander* the Great, who marching with his Army through the desert place of *Africa*, they, as well as himself, were grievously afflicted with Thirst, and when a Souldier brought him some Water in his Head-piece, he spilt it upon the ground in the presence of them all. This example of Abstinence proved to be more useful than if he could have supplied them with Water.

## CHAP. VIII.

*Of streightning an Enemy.*

## Example 1.

**W**hen *Cariolanus* undertook to revenge the shame of his Banishment by an open War, he forbid the spoiling of the Lands belonging to the Noble-men of *Rome*, but burnt and destroyed the Lands of the Common People; that by that means he might cause a Discord between the *Romans*, and a division in their Consents and Resolutions.

2. *Hannibal* endeavoured to bring into Jealousie, and asperse with Infamy, *Fabius Maximus*, unto whom he was not equal in Courage nor in the arts of War, by destroying all the Country, and leaving his Fields alone untouched. But he, to preserve himself in the Reputation of his Citizens, that they might not suspect his Faithfulness, had such a great and noble Soul, as to cause his Possessions to be publicly offer'd to be sold.

C 2

3. 2



3. *Q. Fabius Maximus*, being Consul the fifth time, when the Armies of the *Gauls*, the *Umbri*, the *Hetrusci*, and the *Samnites*, joyned together against the People of *Rome*, against whom he had fortified his Camp beyond the *Apennine Hills*, writ to *Fulvius* and *Posthumius*, who were left to defend the City, to march with their Forces to the Town of *Sitium* or *Clusium*. The *Hetrusci* and the *Umbri* followed them to defend their Borders, and left the *Samnites* and the *Gauls*, whom *Fabius*, together with his Partner *Decius*, assaulted and overcame.

4. When *M. Curius* marched against the *Sabins*, who, having gathered a numerous Army, left their own Borders, and entred into the Confines of the *Romans*, he sent by private ways a Party of his Men to spoil the Fields of the *Sabins*, and to burn their Towns here and there; which oblig'd the *Sabins* to return, to prevent the spoiling of their own Country. By this means *Curius* had an opportunity to waste the Borders of the Enemy, to drive away their Army without fighting, and when they were separated to overcome them.

5. When *T. Didius* was afraid with the small number of his Men to encounter the Enemy, and delayed the Fight till the coming of the Legions that were expected, and hearing that the Enemy was marching against them, he made a Speech to his Souldiers, and commanded them to prepare for a Fight, and purposely caus'd the Captives to be negligently kept; so that some of them escaped, and carried news to their Party, that the *Romans* were ready for the Battel; which made them, in expectation of a Fight, to keep their strength together, and not march to meet them for whom they designed to lye in Ambush. By this means, the Legions arrived safe to *Didius*, without the loss of one man.

6. In

6. In the *Carthaginian War*, some Cities purposed to forsake the *Romans* and joyn with the *Carthaginians*; but having given Hostages, they desired to recover them first into their hands before they fell away: they therefore pretended, that there was a Sedition amongst the Neighbours, which the *Roman* Ambassadors ought to appease; whom being sent, they kept them in lieu of their Hostages, and would not suffer them to depart till they had their own return'd back.

7. When the *Roman* Ambassadors were sent to King *Antiochus*, who had with him *Hannibal*, after that the *Carthaginians* were subdued, to make use of his advice against the *Romans*; by frequent visiting and Discourses with *Hannibal*, they made him to be suspected by the King, who otherwise would have highly favoured him, and to whom he had been very useful because of his subtilty and knowledge in War.

8. *Q. Metellus*, making War against *Jugurtha*, prevailed with Money upon the King's Ambassadors to betray their Master; and when others were sent, he corrupted them also, and likewise the third; but the business succeeded not so far as to get *Jugurtha* into his hands, for he desired to have him delivered alive; nevertheless, many things happened from thence; for when the Letters which he writ to the Kings Friends were intercepted, he caused them all to be put to Death, whereby he was deprived of good Counsel, and could not get nor procure to himself any other Friends.

9. When *C. Caesar* understood by a certain Waterbearer which he had intercepted, that *Afranius* and *Petreius* would by night remove and march out of their Camp; that he might without any trouble to his Men hinder the purpose and intent of his

C 3

Enc-

Enemies, in the beginning of the night he commanded his Souldiers to give the signal for the taking up and loading of their Baggage, and the Mules to be driven along by the Enemies Camp with noise and hurry. This caused them to keep in their Camp, for they imagined that *Cesar* was marching away.

10. *Scipio Africanus*, for the more convenient receiving of Supplies of Men and Provisions, sent *Venticus Thermus* to *Hannibal*, to treat with him, while he in the mean space went to help their landing.

11. *Dionysius*, the King of *Syracuse*, when a vast number of *Africans* were to pass over into *Sicily* to fight him, fortified several Castles in many places, and commanded the Garrisons to deliver them to the Enemy as soon as they should come, and to return secretly to *Syracuse*. The *Africans* were forced to keep Guards in the Castles that they had taken; so that when he saw the rest reduced to that small number that he desired, he with equal Forces assaulted and overcame them; for by this Policy he gathered all his Strength together, and scattered the Enemies.

12. When *Agefilas* the *Lacedaemonian* made War upon *Tisaphernes*, he pretended to invade the Country of *Caria*, as the fittest place, being full of Mountains, to encounter with the *Persians*, who were numerous in Horse. By the divulging of this Design, he caused *Tisaphernes* to wait for him in *Caria* while he broke into *Lydia*, where the chief City of that Government was. Having therefore overcome such as were left there, he got into his Possession the King's Treasury.

## CHAP. IX.

## Of pacifying the Seditions of Souldiers.

## Example 1.

**A** *Manlius*, the Consul, understanding that the Souldiers who were in their Winter Quarters in *Campania*, had plotted together to cut the Throats of their Landlords, and to plunder their Goods, sent word that another Party should be there in the same Winter Quarters. By this means he spoil'd the Purpose of the Conspirators, freed the Country from the danger, and took occasion to punish the Offenders.

2. *L. Sylla*, when some Legions of the *Roman* Citizens broke out furiously into a dangerous Sedition, restored them again to a peaceable Temper by this Policy: He caused the News to be quickly spread, that the Enemies Army was at hand, and a noise to be made to run to their Arms, and the Signal of the Battel to be given: by this means the Sedition ended, and all joyned together to encounter the Enemy.

3. *Cn. Pompeius*, when his Army had killed the Senate of *Milan*, that he might not cause any tumult by calling to him only such as were guilty, commanded some that had no hand in the Crime to come together with the Murderers, who were the less afraid, because they were not separated from the rest, neither did they seem to be called out because of their Fault. They all appeared; and they

who were guiltless were careful to keep the Criminals from an Escape, lest they should be blamed for their Flight.

4. *C. Caesar*, when some of his Legions were so furiously seditious as to threaten the death of their Leaders, dissembled his fear, and went strait to his Souldiers, who desired to be discharged, which he granted with an angry Countenance. When they were at liberty; he oblig'd them to Repentance, to give satisfaction to him their General, and to become more obedient for the future in performing all the Duties and Works of a Souldier.

## CHAP. X.

### *How to give a Check to the unseasonable impatience and desire of fighting.*

#### Example 1.

**Q.** *Sertorius*, having found by experience that he was an unequal Match to the whole Roman Army together, that he might make the barbarous and ignorant People of *Spain*, who unadvisedly desired to fight, sensible thereof, he caused two Horses to be brought, the one strong and lusty, the other very little and weak, and put two Young-men answerable to them, the one strong, and the other slender. To the strong man he commanded to pull off the Tail of the weak Horse at once; to the slender person, to pluck the Hairs off the lusty Horse one by one: when therefore the slender Person had

had done what he was ordered, and the strong Person did strive in vain about the Tail of the weak Horse; now, saith *Sertorius* to his Souldiers, by this example I have discovered to you the Condition of the Roman Troops: they are not to be overcome if you assault them together, but you may break and destroy them if you come upon them when separated.

2. The same *Sertorius*, when he took notice that his Souldiers unadvisedly demanded the Signal of the Battel, and judg'd that they would break out into a Tumult if they did not fight, suffered one Troop of Horse to attack the Enemy; when they were over-powered, he sent more to assist them: thus he received them all safe in their Retreat, and without any loss. He discovered to them what would have been the issue of the Fight which they desired. After this they were much more obedient to his Orders and Command.

3. *Agefilaus* the *Lacedæmonian*, having pitched his Camp upon the Banks of a River against the *Thebans*, and understanding that the Enemy did far exceed him in number, was resolved to keep his Men from the desire of a Battel, by telling them that the Gods had advised him to fight from the Hills; therefore, having left a small Guard upon the sides of the River, he marched up to the Hills. The *Thebans* judging it to be done out of Fear, passed the River with their Army, and easily beat off the Guard, and hastily followed after *Agefilaus*, who routed them in a disadvantageous place with a handful of Men.

4. *Scorylo*, the General of the *Daci*, understood that the People of *Rome* were divided, and troubled with Civil Wars, yet he thought not convenient to venture against them, because Citizens may unite

together against a foreign Enemy. To make his Countrymen sensible of this, he caused two Dogs to fight very eagerly before them, and at the same time a Wolf to appear. The Dogs immediately left their fighting, and run upon the Wolf. By this Example he kept back those barbarous and ignorant People from attempting any thing against the Romans.

## CHAP. XI.

### *How an Army is to be encourag'd to a Fight.*

#### Example 1.

**W**hen *M. Fabius* and *Cn. Manlius* were Consuls, and Generals against the *Hetrusci*, the Army, because of the Seditions, were very unwilling to fight of their own accord, pretended a delay, until the Souldiers were forced and animated by the Reproaches of the Enemies, to desire the liberty to fight them, and to swear that they would never return without the Victory.

2. *Fulvius* the Nobler, being necessitated with a small Army to fight with a numerous Army of the *Samnites*, who were proud of their former Successes, pretended that a Legion of the Enemies had been by him corrupted, and perswaded to revolt; and to confirm them in this Belief, commanded the Collonels and the Captains of his first Ranks, to gather together all the coined Money, the Gold and Silver that they had, and offer it to the Trai-

tors,

tors, as their Reward: withal, he promised them that should lend their Money, that when the Victory was obtained he would gratifie and reward them sufficiently: which Persuasion and Belief gave such an Alacrity and Confidence to the Romans, that it obtained for them a famous Victory, and the Conclusion immediately after of the War.

3. *C. Caesar*, marching with his Army to give Battel to *Ariovistus*, told, in a Speech, to his Souldiers, who were troubled with Fear, That he would employ that day none but the tenth Legion to fight, that by this Testimony and Declaration of exceeding in Carriage, they might be obliged to behave themselves manfully, and the rest for Shame and Grief that others should carry away the Glory and Esteem of Valour, might be forced to fight bravely.

4. *Q. Fabius Maximus*, who knew very well that the Romans were of such a generous Disposition that they would be provoked by Contempt, and understanding also, that there was nothing of Moderation or Justice to be expected from the *Carthaginians*, sent Ambassadors to Carthage to treat about Articles of Peace. They brought back such unjust Conditions, and so insolent, that the Roman Army were thereby encouraged to fight rather than to yield to them.

5. *Agésilas*, the General of the *Lacedemonians*, having pitched his Camp near the confederate City of the *Orthomeni*, understood that the most part of his Souldiers were securing their most precious things within the Walls; he therefore commanded the Citizens not to receive any thing which belonged to his Army, that his Souldiers might fight more desperately when they knew that they were to fight for the Preservation of all that they had.

6. When

6. When *Epamihondas*, the General of the *Thebans*, was to give Battel to the *Lacedemonians*, that his Souldiers might be encouraged not only by their Strength, but also by their Inclinations, he declared in a publick Speech, That the *Lacedemonians* intended, if they obtained the Victory, to destroy all the Males, to lead away into Captivity their Wives and Childrén, and to demolish *Thebes*. This Discovery so stir'd them up, and made them so resolved, that at the first Onset the *Thebans* got the Victory of the *Lacedemonians*.

7. *Leotychidas*, the *Lacedemonian* Captain, being to fight the same day in which his Confederates had gained a Victory at Sea, though he was ignorant of what had been done, published abroad, that he had received the News that his Friends had got the day, that his Souldiers who were to fight might be more courageous.

8. *A. Posthumius*, in the Battel against the *Larins*, encouraged his Army with the Appearance of two Young-men on Horseback, whom he declared to be *Castor* and *Pollux* come to their Assistance. By this means he obliged them to return to the Fight.

9. *Archidamus* the *Lacedemonian*, making War against the *Arcadians*, erected an Altar in his Camp, and caused Horses to be led round about it in the Night. The next Morning he shewed their Footsteps, and told his Men, that *Castor* and *Pollux* had rid round about, and would be assisting to them in the Battel.

10. When *Pericles*, the General of the *Athenians*, was to give Battel, he took notice that there was a Grove in the view of both Armies, of an extraordinary Thickness, and very dark and large, consecrated to *Pluto*: in this place he put a Man of

of a large Stature, upon very high and big Slippers, with a purple Robe and long Hair, upon a great Chariot, dragg'd by two white Horses, that when the Signal for the Battel should be given, he might call *Pericles* by name, and encourage him, and promise him the Assistance of the Gods; which so terrified the Enemies, that before the casting of their Darts they fled.

11. *L. Sylla*, that his Souldiers might be more ready to fight, pretended, that the Gods did discover to him things to come. And at last, in the sight of his Army, before they entered into the Conflict, he would pray to an Image of a moderate Bigness which he had taken from *Delphos*, saying to it, that it should make good and hasten the Victory that it had promised to him.

12. *C. Marius* had a certain Magician Woman out of *Syria*, to tell him of the Success and Events of Battels.

13. *Q. Sertorius*, having an Army of barbarous Souldiers, not governed by reason, led about *Portugal* with him a white Hind, very large and beautiful, by which he told them that he understood the things that he was to do, and avoid; to the end that those barbarous People might obey his Orders, as commanded from above.

We must not make use of this sort of Stratagems only, when we are to deal with such as we judge unskilful and ignorant; but much more those things are to be invented which may be of that kind that it may be believed that they have been discovered by these things.

14. When *Alexander* the *Macedonian* was to offer Sacrifice, he caused to be written with a Juyce, in that hand of the Diviner, which he was to put upon the Bowels of the Beast, such Letters as did  
signis

signifie that *Alexander* should have the Victory; which Letters appearing upon the hot Liver, was shewn by the King to the Souldiers, to encrease their Courage, as if the Gods did promise to him the Victory.

15. *Innides* the Soothsayer, did practice the same thing when *Eumenes* was to fight with the *Gauls*.

16. *Epaminondas* the *Theban*, encountring with the *Lacedaemonians*, did think to encrease the Confidence of his Men with a Trick of Religion. The Arms and Weapons which were hung up to adorn the Temples, he caused to be secretly taken away in the Night, and perswaded his Souldiers that the Gods had done it to follow and assist them in their Fight.

17. *Agefilaus* the *Lacedaemonian*, having taken some *Persian* Captives, whose Garb, when it was worn by them, did strike a terror to his men, was wont to shew them all naked, that they might behold their white Skin and their groundless Fear together.

18. *Gelo*, King of *Syracuse*, having proclaimed a War against the *Carthaginians*, and taken many of them Captives, was wont to produce the weakest of them all naked, chiefly of the Auxiliaries, who were black and swarthy, that his Souldiers might thereby learn to contemn them.

19. *Cyrus*, the *Persian* King, that he might stir up the Minds of his Country-men, wearied them a whole day in cutting down a certain Wood, and the next day invited them to a most plentiful Feast, and asked them, which was most pleasing to them; when they answered, that the present things were most grateful, he replied, By this alone you may attain to these things; you can never be free nor happy unless you overcome the *Medes*. By this per-

perswasion he encouraged them to the desire of fighting.

20. *L. Sylla*, fighting against *Archelaus*, a General of *Mithridates*, near *Pirea*, had in his Army very lazy Souldiers; but by wearying them in working he forced them to desire from him the Signal to fight.

21. *Q. Fabius Maximus*, fearing lest his Souldiers should have such a Confidence in their Ships unto which they could fly for shelter, that this might hinder them in fighting, commanded them to be burned before he entered into the Battel.

## CHAP. XII.

*How to expell the Fears which Souldiers may have conceived from ill Omens, and contrary Accidents.*

### Example 1.

**W**hen *Scipio* transported his Army from *Italy* over into *Africa*, he fell down at his landing upon the Ground, and saw that his Souldiers were thereat astonished; but he, by the greatness and constancy of his Courage, turned it to their Encouragement, by saying, you may now go to play, Souldiers, I have already overcome and taken *Africa*.

2. *C. Caesar*, falling down by chance as he was landing out of a Ship, cried out, I hold thee fast,  
O Mo-

O Mother Earth! By which Interpretation, he seemed to return to those Lands from whence he was departed.

3. *T. Sempronius Gracchus*, Consul, having drawn up his Army against the *Picentes*, the ancient Inhabitants of the *Marca de Acona*, there happened at that instant a trembling of the Earth, or an Earthquake, which terrified both Armies; but he by a Speech confirmed and encouraged his Men, to attack his Enemies while they were frightened with Superstition, and over-came them.

4. *Q. Sertorius*, when the Bucklers of his Horsemen on the outside and the Breasts of their Horses appeared in a prodigious manner on a sudden to be bloody, he interpreted, that it was a sign of their obtaining the Victory, because those parts used to be sprinkled, with the Enemies Blood in fighting.

5. When *Epaminondas* the *Theban* saw his Souldiers grieved because the Wind had taken off from his Spear an Ornament that hanged down as a Ribband, and cast it on the Tomb of a certain *Lacedemonian*; I would not have you, said he, be troubled and affrighted, my Souldiers; this signifies the Death of the *Lacedemonians*, for their Sepulchres are adorned for their Funerals.

6. The same *Epaminondas*, when a Flame fell from the Sky in the Night and terrified those that were present, told them, that this Light did discover the Gods.

7. The same General, when he was ready to fight with the *Lacedemonians*, fell down in the Chair in which he was seated, which Accident was commonly interpreted for an ill Omen; and his Souldiers being thereat troubled, he told them, we are now forbidden to sit any longer.

8. *L.*

8. *L. Sulpitius Gallus*, when an Eclipse of the Moon was at hand, that his Souldiers might not mistake it for a Prodigy, gave them an account of it before, with the Reasons and Causes of the Eclipse.

9. When *Agathocles* the *Syracusan* warred against the *Carthaginians*, there happened a like Eclipse of the Moon the Night before the Battel: and seeing his Souldiers troubled as at a great wonder, he acquainted them with the Reasons of the Eclipse, and told them, that whatever should happen did relate to the nature of things, and did not concern their Purpose.

10. When there fell a Thunder-bolt into the Camp of *Pericles*, which terrified the Souldiers, he gathered them together, and before them all he beat two Stones one against another, and struck Fire, and by that means quieted their Minds, telling them, that in the like manner, by the violent motion of the Clouds the Thunder is produced.

11. It happened to *Timotheus* the *Athenian*, when he was to fight against the Inhabitants of *Corcyra*, that the Master of his Vessel had commanded the Signal to be given to stop the Fleet ready to set sail, because one of the Men at the Oar began to sneeze; Dost thou wonder, said *Timotheus*, that amongst so many thousand men there is one man that shivers or sneezes for cold.

12. When *Chabrias* the *Athenian* was ready to fight at Sea with his Fleet, there fell a Thunder-bolt at the head of his Ship, which affrighted his Souldiers, who looked upon it as a prodigious thing. Now, said he, we ought chiefly to begin to fight when the greatest of the Gods, *Jupiter*, hath given us a sign to our Fleet, that he will be present, and assist us.

T H E

---



---

## THE SECOND BOOK

Of the

# Stratagems of WAR

O F

*Sextus Julius Frontinus*

a ROMAN Consul.

---

### *A Short Introduction.*

**I**N the first Book we have already plac'd in order the Examples fit, in my Opinion, for a Captain to understand, in relation to those things that are to be perform'd before a Battel; we shall now give an account of what is wont to be done in a Battel; and afterwards those things that are acted in the conclusion of a Fight or War. Now these are the Particulars which belong to a Fight or Battel.

Chap.

**C**Hap. 1. *Of the time to be chosen for a Battel.*

Chap. 2. *Of the place to be chosen for a Battel.*

Chap. 3. *Of the marshalling and ordering an Army.*

Chap. 4. *How to disorder an Enemies Army.*

Chap. 5. *Of Ambushes.*

Chap. 6. *Of suffering an Enemy to depart for fear that out of despair he should renew the Fight.*

Chap. 7. *How to dissemble ill Successes.*

Chap. 8. *Of restoring a Battel by Constancy and Courage.*

Chap. 9. *Of those things that are practis'd after a Fight if all things succeed, and of the finishing a War.*

Chap. 10. *Of remedying ill Successes if things happen contrary.*

Chap. 11. *How to preserve such as are wavering in their Fidelity and Allegiance.*

Chap. 12. *The things that are to be done about a Camp, if we have not Confidence enough in our present Forces.*

Chap. 13. *Of the manner how to make an Escape.*

CHAP.



## CHAP. I.

*Of the time to be chosen for a Battel.*

## Example 1.

**P.** *Scipio*, when he was in *Spain*, understood that *Hafdrubal*, the *Carthaginian* General, had commanded his Army out to fight without their Breakfast; he therefore kept in his Men till the seventh hour of the day, and ordered them in the mean while to rest and refresh themselves with food: and when the Enemy, tir'd with Hunger, Thirst, and waiting, were marching again into their Camp, he led out suddenly his Army, gave them Battel, and routed them.

2. When *Metellus Pius*, General in *Spain* against *Herculeius*, saw that he brought forth his Men by break of day, before his Camp, in the hottest Season of the Year, he kept in his Forces within his Camp, till the sixth hour of the day: and when they were tired with the fervency of the Sun, he easily overcame with his fresh men such as were thus wearied out.

3. The same *Metellus*, having joyned his Forces with those commanded by *Pompeius* against *Sertorius* in *Spain*, often drew up his Army in order of Battel, the Enemy in the mean while not judging himself able to encounter with both Generals. At last, when he saw that the Souldiers of *Sertorius* demanded very furiously to fight, lifting up their Shoulders, and stretching out their Launces, he advised to give way for that time to their unusual Fer-

Fervency, and to retreat into his Camp with his men, and perswaded *Pompey* to do the like.

4. *Posthumius*, the Consul in *Sicilia*, encamped about three Miles from the *Carthaginian* Army. Their Generals drew up every day their Troops in order before the Fortifications of the *Romans*; but he entertained them always with small Parties and light Skirmishes before his Works, untill the Enemy began to despise and grow insolent by this Custom. Then, having provided all things needful in the night, according to his former Custom, he resisted the Onsets of his Enemies with a few of his Men, and kept them in Play longer than ordinary. When they were sufficiently tired out after the sixth hour of the day, and they were ready to sound a Retreat being very hungry, with his fresh Men he soon routed them that were overcome before with the forementioned Evils.

5. *Iphicrates* the *Athenian*, understanding at what time the Enemies were diligently taking their Food, commanded his Men to dispatch their eating sooner, that he might lead them out to Battel. And having assaulted the Enemy, he so enangled them, that they could neither fight nor escape. At last, towards the Evening, he retreated with his Army, but kept them in Arms. The Enemies being weary with standing upon their Guard, and Hunger, immediately hastened to refresh themselves with Rest and Food. Then did *Iphicrates* lead out his Army, and assault the disorder'd Enemy in their Camp.

6. The same Person, being General against the *Lacedemonians*, pitched his Camp near to the Enemies; and when both Parties were accustomed to march out at set times to bring in Wood and Forrage, on a certain day he sent out a Party of Ser-

vants

vants and Scullions to perform this Office, and kept in his Souldiers; and when the Enemies were scattered to provide the same things, he took their Camp; and when they ran back in haste at the noise of the Tumult, with their Burdens, he easily cut them in pieces or took them Prisoners.

7. *Verginius*, the Consul amongst the *Volsci*, when he spied the Enemy running to them from far in disorder, commanded his men to rest with their Javelins fixed in the Ground: then when they were out of Breath, he charged them with the fresh Companies of his Army, and routed them.

8. *Q. Fabius Maximus*, knowing that the *Gauls* and the *Samnites* were used to prevail in the first Onset, and that the Courage of his Men was not to be wearied out, but increas'd the more by the delays of fighting, commanded them to be content in the first Encounter, to defend themselves, that by degrees they might weary the Enemy, which accordingly succeeded: he then came on to assist them with the reserve, and in the first Battalion, with all his Forces, he routed the oppressed Enemy.

9. King *Philip*, in the Battel of *Cheronea*, knowing that his Souldiers were hardned by their long use of Arms, purposely drew in length the Fight that he had with the *Athenians*, which was fierce indeed, but without experience, and sharp, because of their furious Assault; but when the *Athenians* began to faint, he advanc'd more speedily with his Colours, and cut them in pieces.

10. The *Lacedaemonians*, understanding for certain that the *Messenians* were so enraged that they were come to fight against them with their Wives and Children, delayed the Fight till another time.

11. *C. Caesar*, in the Civil War, when the Army of *Afranius* and *Petreibus* was enclosed in by him, and wanted Water, and therefore provok'd to fight, when they had destroyed all their Carriages to enter into the Battel, he kept in his men, judging it no fit time to fight when he had provok'd his Enemies to Anger and Despair.

12. *Cn. Pompeius*, desiring to force *Mithridates*, who was flying, to fight him, chose to encounter him in the Night, and to stop him in his Retreat: and thus, being well prepared, he drove him suddenly to the Necessity of a Battel, and so drew up his Army, that *Mithridates* his men had the light of the Moon in their Faces, which shewed to the *Romans* more plainly their Enemies in the night.

13. It is certain, that *Jugurtha*, not unmindful of the *Romans* Skill and Courage in Arms, was always wont to begin a Fight towards the evening; that if his Men were beaten, they might have the advantage of the night to hide themselves.

14. *Lucullus*, General against *Mithridates* and *Tigranes*, in *Armenia* the greater, near *Tigranocerta*, finding that he had in his Army only fifteen thousand fighting men, and that his Enemies were an innumerable multitude, but unexperienc'd and unfit for Fight, made use of their Weakness, encounter'd them when they were out of order, and suddenly routed them, in such a manner, that the two Kings were forced to cast away their Royal Ornaments, and to fly.

15. *Cl. Tiberius Nero*, fighting against the *Pannoni*, when those barbarous People marched out furiously to the Battel by break of day, kept in his Men, and staid till the Enemy was well beaten with Storms and Rain, which happened that day to be frequent. At last, when he saw that they fainted both in Courage

rage and Strength by standing in the Rain, he gave the Signal, charged, and routed them.

16. When *C. Caesar* was General amongst the *Gauls*, he understood that *Ariovistus*, the King of the *Germans*, had resolved and appointed this as a Law to his Souldiers, not to fight when the Moon was in its Decrecency. He therefore then chiefly, having appointed the Battel when the Enemy was hindred by Superstition, overcame them.

17. *D. Augustus Vespasianus* assaulted the *Jews* on their Sabbath-day, when it was unlawful for them to act any thing of Moment, and overcame them.

18. *Lyfander*, the *Lacedæmonian* General against the *Athenians*, at the Town of *Ægospotamos*, resolved at certain times to break in upon the *Athenian* Navy, and to retreat back again with his Ships; which having performed often, when the *Athenians* after his Departure were scattered to gather their Forces together, he, according to his former Custom, stretch'd out his Navy in length, and again commanded them together. And when the greater part of the Enemies, according to custom, were departed, he assaulted the rest, destroyed them, and took the whole Fleet.

## CHAP. II.

*Of the Place to be chosen for a Fight.*

## Example I.

When *M. Curius* saw that he could by no means resist the *Phalanx*, or the Body of ten thousand *Pikes* of King *Pyrrhus*, when they were joyned together in an open Field, ordered the matter so, that he was to fight in a streight and narrow place, where being close together, they might be an hinderance to one another.

2. *Cn. Pompeius*, in *Cappadocia*, chose a place for his Camp in the higher Ground, that the proclivity of the Hill might assist the charging of his Souldiers; so that by their running down he easily overcame *Mithridates* and his Army.

3. When *C. Caesar* was to fight against *Pharnaces* the Son of *Mithridates*, he drew up his Men in Battel on a Hill, which much facilitated the gaining of the Victory; for the *Roman* Souldiers, casting their Darts from the higher Ground upon the Enemy, quickly caused them to turn their Backs.

4. When *Lucullus* was to encounter with *Mithridates* and *Tigranes* in the greater *Armenia* near *Tigranacerta*, he got possession in haste of a plain Ground which was on the top of a Hill, with part of his Troops, and then assaulted the Enemy which was under, charged their Horse in the Flanks, and having driven part of them, and pursued them when they ran in and disordered their Foot, he obtain'd a most famous Victory.

5. *Ventidius*, General against the *Parthian* Army, would not lead out his Souldiers to the Fight till the Enemy was within fifty Paces, and then, by running suddenly upon them, he closed in with them so near, that he frustrated their Arrows which they made use of at a distance: by this proceeding he shewed such an appearance of Confidence and Courage, that he quickly overcame those barbarous People.

6. When *Hannibal* was to fight against *Marcellus* at *Numistro*, he plac'd his Army amongst the Pits and broken ways on one hand, and made use of the nature of the place as a Wall and a Defence. Thus he got the Victory, and overcame a most famous Captain.

7. When the same *Hannibal*, at the Battel of *Cannæ*, understood that the River *Volturnus*, beyond the nature of other Rivers, yielded strong Winds in the Morning, which raised up great Clouds of Sand and Dust, he drew up his Army in such a manner, that all the violence of the Wind beat upon the Backs of his Men, and into the Faces and Eyes of the *Romans*: by these Inconveniencies, which wonderfully incommoded the *Roman* Army, he got that remarkable Victory.

8. *Minus*, having appointed a day to fight against the *Cimbri* and *Teutones*, placed before his Camp his Souldiers, strengthened with Food, that by the little distance that was between them and their Enemies their Army might be first overcome by their labour in gaining it: and besides their weariness in running this space, he gave them another Trouble; he drew up his Men so, that the Army of those barbarous People had the Sun, the Wind, and the Dust in their Faces.

9. *Cleomenes*, the *Lacedæmonian* General against *Hippias* the *Athenian*, who was the stronger in Horse, caused Trees to be laid along the Plane where they were to fight, and rendered it unpassable to the Horse.

10. The *Iberi* were received by a vast multitude of the Enemies, and fearing that they should be surrounded, marched to the sides of a River which in that Country had high Banks. Thus being defended behind by the River, and excelling the Enemy in Valour, they assaulted the first Ranks, and destroyed the whole Army of their Enemies.

11. *Xanthippus* the *Lacedæmonian* changed the Fortune of the *Carthaginian* War only by the change of a place; for when the *Carthaginians* were almost reduced to despair, they hired him to be their General. When he took notice that the *Africans*, who excelled and exceeded the *Romans* in Horse and Elephants, drew up on the Hills, and that the *Romans*, whose Strength consisted in their Foot, held the Valleys, he led the *Carthaginians* down to them, with his Elephants he disordered their Ranks, and with the *Numidian* Horse he pursued the dispersed Souldiers, and routed their Army, winning the same day a Victory both by Sea and Land.

12. When *Epaminondas*, the *Theban* General, was leading his Army against the *Lacedæmonians*, he caused a Party of Horse to ride up and down before, that they might raise a great Dust before the Enemies eyes: when they expected the Horse to fall upon them, he led about his Foot Souldiers from that side where the Horse were riding against the Enemy, and fell upon them suddenly in the Rear, and overcame them.

13. Three hundred *Lacedæmonians* held and defended the *Streights* called *Thermopylae* against an innumerable multitude of *Persians*, because those *Streights* would not suffer a greater number to fight at once near at hand: by this means, they being equal in number to those barbarous People, but excelling them in Valour and Courage, cut in pieces a great many of them: neither could they have been overcome if it had not been for a Traitor named *Epiates* of *Trachinia*, who led the *Persians* round about upon their Backs, and overpower'd them.

14. *Themistocles*, the *Athenian* General, when he saw that it would be very much for the Advantage of *Greece* to fight with *Xerxes* his numerous Navy in the *Streights* of *Salamini*, and could not persuade his Citizens, by craft he brought to pass that the *Grecians* were forc'd to comply with this Advantage; for, pretending himself a Traitor, he sent to *Xerxes* to signify to him, that his Countrymen were ready to fly away, and that it would be far more difficult for him to assault every City by a Siege. By this means he brought to pass, that the *Persian* Navy was first disquieted while they were watching all night: afterwards in the Morning he with his fresh men encounter'd with the said *Persians*, tired with want of Rest, in a streight place as he desired, in which *Xerxes* could not make use of his numbers, in which he did exceed.

## CHAP. III.

## Of ordering and drawing up an Army in Battel, &amp;c.

## Example 1.

**C**N. *Scipio*, General in *Spain* against *Hanno* at the Town of *Indibile*, took notice that the *Carthaginian* Army was so ordered, that the *Spaniards* were to fight in the right Wing, who were indeed the stoutest Souldiers, but mercenary, and warred not for themselves but for others; and that in the left Wing were the *Africans*, a weaker sort of Men, but more resolved: he therefore changed the left Wing of his Army for his right, which he had composed of the strongest and ablest Men, and encountered with the Enemies Army a-thwart. At last he routed the *Africans*, and easily forced the *Spaniards*, who in the Retreat stood still, as Lookers on, to surrender themselves.

2. *Philip* King of *Macedo*, fighting against the *Illyrians*, saw that the Front of the Enemies Army was very close together, and composed of the choicest men taken out of the whole Army, which caused the sides to be but weak: he therefore placed his best and stoutest Men in his right Wing, and with them assaulted the left of the Enemies Army, routed and disordered them, and got the Victory.

3. When *Permenes*, the *Theban* Captain, took notice of the *Persian* Army, that their strongest Troops were in their right Wing; he drew up his  
D 3 Men

Men in the same manner, he appointed all his Horse, and the ablest of all his Foot to be in the right Wing, and opposed the weakest of his against the strongest of the *Persians*, and commanded them that at the first Charge they should save themselves by Flight, and retreat into the Woods and rocky Places. By this means he disappointed the strength of the Enemies Army, and with the best part of his Troops, in the right Wing, he encompassed about the *Persians*, and overthrew them.

4. When *P. Cornelius Scipio*, who was afterwards surnamed *Africanus*, made War against *Asdrubal*, the *Carthaginian* General in *Spain*, he led out his Army for several days so ordered in Battel, that the Body or Battalion in the middle was composed of his strongest Men; but when the Enemy also came forth constantly disposed in the same manner, *Scipio*, that very day that he had appointed to fight, changed the Order of his Battel, and placed his stoutest Souldiers, namely, his *Roman* Legions, in the Wings, and his Men who were slenderly armed in the middle, but something behind the rest. By this means, he assaulted with his two Wings that were strongest, and appearing like a half Moon, the weakest part of the Enemies Army, and easily routed them.

5. *Metellus*, in that Battel wherein he overcame *Herculeius* in *Spain*, when he understood that his Enemies Troops that were esteemed the stoutest were placed in the middle, caused his Battalion that was opposite to draw back, that they might not come to fight with the Enemy untill their Wings were routed, and their main Body enclosed in on both sides.

6. *Artaxerxes*, marching against the *Grecians*, who were entred into *Persia*, because he exceeded them

them in number of Men, he stretched out his Army farther than the Enemies, and placed his Horse in the Van, and such as were lightly armed in the Wings; and thus he marched softly on purpose with his middle Battalion, that he might encompass them: which when he had done, he cut them all in pieces.

7. *Hannibal* observed a contrary order in the Battel of *Cannæ*; for he caused the middle Battalion to advance before, and kept back the Wings: by this means he overpower'd their Men at the first Charge. For this same General caused his Souldiers to fight close together, and the Wings to wind about in the manner of a Half-Moon, and to march on at his Command; so that when the Enemy was earnest in the pursuit, he enclosed them into the middle of his Army, fell upon them, and cut them in pieces on all sides, for his Souldiers were well acquainted with this manner of fighting, after a long experience. None but such Souldiers as are well skill'd and able to answer to every thing, can possibly perform and observe this kind of Warfare.

8. *Livius Salinator* and *Claudius Nero*, when in the second *Punic* War *Asdrubal* was unwilling to fight, and therefore had drawn up his Army upon a stony Hill behind a Vineyard; led their Forces up on all sides, surrounded him on every hand, and without shelter assaulted and overcame him.

9. When *Hannibal* had been in many Battels overpower'd by *Claudius Marcellus*, at last in his Marches he so placed his Camp, that he had the Assistance and Defence either of some Hill or Marsh Ground, or some other convenient place, and did draw up his Army in such a manner, that when the *Romans* had the Advantage he could retreat with them into his Fortifications with little or no loss;

and when they were beaten, it was in his power and choice to pursue them.

10. *Xanthippus*, the *Lacedæmonian* General in *Africa* against *M. Attilius Regulus*, placed his Men slenderly armed in the Van, and the Strength of his Army next to second them, commanding his Auxiliary Troops, as soon as they had cast their Darts to give Ground to the Enemy, and when they were retreated within their own Ranks, to run immediately to the sides, and to charge from both Wings the Enemy that was at handy Blows with the Body of their Army, and to surround them in.

11. *Sertorius* practiced the same thing in *Spain* when he was fighting against *Pompey*.

12. *Cleandridas*, the *Lacedæmonian* General against the *Lucani*, drew up his Men close together that they might appear but a small Body, and more contemptible to the Enemy; but when the Battel was begun he caused his Men to open, and having encompassed in the Enemy, he routed them.

13. When *Gastron* the *Lacedæmonian* went to succour the *Ægyptians* against the *Persians*, and understood that his *Grecian* Troops were stoutest Souldiers and most feared of the *Persians*, he caused them to change their Arms, and to march in the Van; and when they encountered with the *Persians* with equal Advantage, he sent a Party of *Ægyptians* to second them: when the *Persians*, who were fighting with those *Grecians* whom they thought to be *Ægyptians*, perceived the coming in of the Multitude, whom they esteemed to be also *Grecians*, they run away for fear.

14. *Cn. Pompeius*, in *Albania*, because the Enemy was powerful in Horse and numbers of Men, commanded his Souldiers to cover their Head pieces in a streight place near a Hill, for fear they should  
be

be discovered by their shining in the Sun; and he commanded his Horse-men to go down into the Plain and cover the Foot, and at the first Onset of the Enemy, to give back till they were returned to the Foot, and then to place themselves in the Wings; which being accordingly performed, the *Roman* Army arose, encounter'd with those that were unadvisedly got in so far, who meeting with an unexpected Resistance were cut all in pieces.

15. *M. Antonius*, General against the *Parthians*, commanded his Men to stop when an innumerable company of Arrows were discharged upon them, and to cover themselves over with their Targets, upon which when the Arrows fell, did no Injury to the Souldiers, and the Enemy was thereby exhausted.

16. When *Hannibal* encounter'd with *Scipio* in *Africa*, because he had an Army composed of *Carthaginians* and Auxiliary Troops, some being come from divers Countries, and from *Italy* also; behind fourscore Elephants, which he caused to march before his Army to disorder the *Roman* Ranks, he placed the *Gauls*, the *Ligurians*, the *Baleaves*, and the *Moors*, that they might not be able to fly away, the *Carthaginians* being next behind, that they might in the first encounter with the Enemy disturb or weary them; after them he placed his own Men and the *Macedonians*, who might receive the tired *Romans* afresh: and in the Rear he put the *Italians*, whose Constancy and Courage he suspected, because he had drawn many of them out of *Italy* against their Wills. *Scipio*, against this Order, drew up the strength of the Legions in three Battalions in the Front, dividing them into *Hystati*, *Principes*, and *Triarii*; that is, first, Spear-men, next, such as were of a gentile and noble Descent,  
D 5 last,

last, another sort of Souldiers of the *Roman Army*, who did commonly march and fight in the Rear. Neither were the Companies close together, but he left a space between every one that the Elephants that were driven against them by the Enemy might pass by without disordering the Ranks, and those Intervals he fill'd up with such Souldiers as were lightly armed, and nimble in Onfers and Retreats. This he did that his Army might not appear divided into several Bodies. He commanded these nimble Souldiers, that at the first approach of the Elephants they should retreat, and march to the sides of the Battalions. He placed next his Horse, and divided them into two Wings: the right, being *Roman Horsemen*, he assign'd to *Lelius*; over the left, compos'd of *Numidians*, he appointed King *Mastinissa*: which prudent Order was, no doubt, the Cause of the Victory.

It will not be unpleasing to the Reader, to give here a short Account of the drawing up of *Scipio's Army*, which procured him one of the most famous Victories of Antiquity, together with the Honour of the Triumph, and to the *Romans* the Dominion over their false *Carthaginian* Neighbours. *T. Livius* describes this Battel, *l. 30. c. 33.* in the same manner as *Frontinus*. The Strength and good Successes depended upon the good Order and Preservation of the Ranks of their Army, which was made up of several distinct Legions. The Legion in *Scipio's* time had in it 4200 Souldiers, 1200 Hastati or Spear-men, 1200 Principes, 600 Triarii, 1200 Velites, or lightly arm'd. The Legion was divided into ten Cohorts or distinct Companies, in which were 120 Hastati, 120 Principes, 60 Triarii, and 120 Velites.

*Scipio's*

*Scipio's Cohors* belonging to every Legion is thus represented.

The Hastati	120	40	The Velites.
The Principes	120	40	
The Triarii	60	40	

In every Cohors or Company were three Manipuli, or small Bands, each under one Captain or Centurion. I find some difference in the *Roman* Authors in the numbers of their Legions, and in their ordering of an Army. *Romulus*, their first Founder, as he was but a little Prince, his Army was but small, and his Legion less. With the increase of their Empire their Legions and Cohorts did increase in number. The Legion, as in *Cesar's* time, had 6000 men in it; and so proportionably their Cohorts were more numerous than formerly: but that which gave them a great Advantage over all other Nations, was, their Skill in drawing up of their Armies according to the Place and Enemy with whom they were to fight. *Scipio*, in this Battel, appointed the Strength of his Legions to be in the Front; whereas other Generals use to place their chiefest Men in the Rear, or to keep them for the Reserve. Take here a Scheme of each Legion of *Scipio's Army*, according to the Description of *Frontinus* and *Livy*.

en

The



# The Stratagems of War.

3. The Triarii.	60	60	60	60	60	60	60	60	60	60
2. The Principes.	120	120	120	120	120	120	120	120	120	120
1. The Battalion of Spear-men or Hastati.	120	120	120	120	120	120	120	120	120	120

The Legion of 4200 Souldiers divided into thirty Bands or Companies, under their distinct Leaders or Captains, with that order and space between each Company that was observed by Scipio when he overcame Hannibal in Africa.

The Intervals or Spaces between, were filled up and made good with Velites, or Souldiers lightly armed.

They

# The Stratagems of War. 61

They had that excellent way, that let the ground be never so unfit for a pitch'd Battel, they would bring them up in that order, that one Company was to second another, and relieve such as were weary or over-power'd, who could easily retreat without damage, and fall in the Rear. And though the difference of Arms now causeth us to differ much from their way, yet the wisest Generals, as *Spino-la*, Prince *Maurice*, and others, have profess'd themselves to be indebted to the Romans for some of their skill and cunning in ordering an Army.

17. *Archelaus*, fighting against *Sylla*, in the Front of the Battel appointed Carts, armed with Sythes, to break and disorder the Roman Ranks; in the second he placed his *Macedonian Phalanx*, or 10000 Pikemen; in the third Battalion were, according to the Roman Method, the Auxiliary Troops, mingled with the Fugitives come out of *Italy*, in whose Courage and Resolution he had a great Confidence. In the Rear he drew up a Body of Souldiers lightly armed; and in the Wings he placed his Horsemen, of whom he had a great number, and ordered them to enclose in the Enemy. But *Sylla*, on the contrary side, caused a large Ditch to be dig'd on each hand of his Army, and at the end of the Ditches he raised a Bulwark to defend it, to this end, that he might not be shut in with the vast numbers of the Foot, and chiefly of the Enemy's Horse, who were stronger than his. Next, he divided his Foot into three Bodies, leaving Spaces between for the Souldiers lightly armed: and for his Horse, he drew them up in the Rear, that when time should serve he might send them out to charge the Enemy; and commanded the first Ranks of the second Battel to fix fast in the Ground many sharp Stakes, thick together; so that when the Carts armed with Sythes drew

drew near, he caused the foremost of the *Romans* to retreat within the Stakes before their Cohors, commanding at that instant the whole Army to give a shout, and the forlorn Hope to cast their Darts. By this means the Enemies Carts were either stopped with the Stakes, or terrified with the extraordinary Shout and sudden Assault, so that they turned back upon their own Men, and disordered the *Macedonian* Array, which caused them to give ground, whereas *Sylla* maintain'd his. *Archelaus* at that moment charg'd with his Horse; but when the *Roman* Horsemen encounter'd with them they put them to flight, and compleated the Victory.

18. *C. Caesar* prevented in the same manner with Stakes fixed in the Ground the Carts of the *Gauls* which were armed with Sythes.

19. *Alexander*, at the Battel of *Arbella*, fearing the numbers of his Enemies, and knowing the Courage of his own men, drew up his Army so as to receive the Enemy on every side, that in case he was encompassed in they might fight every way.

20. When *Æmilius Paulus* march'd against *Perseus* King of *Macedonia*, he saw that he had placed a double Phalanx or Body of Pikemen to charge in the middle, surrounded with Souldiers lightly armed, and on both Wings the *Macedonian* Horse. Against this Order the *Roman* General divided his Army into three great Bodies, with some small Companies drawn up in the form of a Wedge; between them he placed his Souldiers lightly armed: when he perceived that this did not profit him, he resolv'd to give Ground, that by this means he might draw the Enemy into stony and broken places, which he had chosen on purpose. But the *Macedonians* mistrusting the Retreat of the *Romans* to be  
out

out of Design, marched forward with their Body of Pikes in good order; then he commanded his Horse to ride undiscover'd out of sight of the *Macedonian* Phalanx, and on the left hand of them, and to assault them with full speed, that he might by the Furiousef of the Charge, and the goodness of their Army, break and turn back the Enemies Pikes, which accordingly succeeded so well, that these Weapons were render'd usefess to the *Macedonians*; so that they were forced to turn their Backs and fly.

21. When *Pyrrhus*, King of *Epirus*, assisted those of *Tarentum* near *Asculum*, according to the Saying of *Homer*, which teacheth to place the most Souldiers in the middle of a Battel, he appointed the *Samnites* and his own Country-men to be in the right Wing, in the left the *Brutii* and *Lucani*, together with the *Salentini*; but in the middle he drew up the *Tarentini*, and ordered his Horse and Elephants to stand as a Reserve. But the *Roman* Consuls, in opposition to him, placed their Horse excellently well in the Wings, the Legions in the Van and Rear; and amongst them they mixed their Auxiliary Troops. In each Army, it is certain, there was forty thousand men: *Pyrrhus* lost half his Army, and the *Romans* about five thousand.

22. When *Cn. Pompeius* encounter'd with *C. Caesar* in the Fields of *Pharsalia*, he divided his Army into three Bodies, and every Body had ten Ranks in Latitude; the strongest Legions, according to their Valour, he placed in the Wings, and between them, in the open spaces, he fill'd up with the new rais'd Troops; in the right Wing he ordered only six hundred Horse because of the River *Enipeus*, that overflowing its Banks had made Holes and Trenches on that side of the Country. The rest of his Horse he drew up in the left Wing with all his  
Auxili-

Auxiliaries, that he might encompass in on that side *Caesar's* Army. Against this Array *Julius Caesar* appeared with three Bodies of an Army, having put his Legions in the Front; and that he might not be enclosed in, he had on his left side a marsh Ground: in the right Wing he placed his Horse, mingled with the nimblest of his Foot-men, who were used to fight with the Horse; behind them he drew up some Companies of Foot to second them, and to be employed on sudden Occasions; but the right Wing he caused to turn winding, that he might better receive the Onset of *Pompey's* Horse: which Order contributed very much to the getting the Victory; for when *Pompey's* Horse were broken in upon them, they sallied out unexpectedly, turned them aside, and exposed them to the Fury of *Caesar's* Foot.

23. The Emperour *Caesar Germanicus*, when the *Catti*, a People of *Germany*, fled into their Forests, and assailed the *Romans* only with their Horse, commanded his Horsemen, as soon as they were come to the Baggage, to leap from their Horses, and to fight on foot. By this means he brought to pass, that in every place he obtain'd the Victory, not without Wonder.

24. *C. Duillius*, seeing that the heaviness of his Ships suffered the *Carthaginian* Navy easily to avoid and pass by them, because of their Nimbleness and Lightness, and that the Courage and Valour of his Men profited him nothing, invented the iron Grapples, which as soon as it had taken hold of an Enemies Ship, there was a Bridge cast over, and the *Roman* Souldiers encounter'd with them in their own Vessels, and cut them in pieces.

## CHAP. IV.

*Of disordering an Enemies Army.*

## Example 1.

When *Papyrius*, surnamed *Cursor*, the Consul's Son, saw that he encounter'd with the obstinate *Sammites* with equal Advantage, he commanded *Spurius Naucius*, privately and unknown to his own Men, to take with him a few Servants and Mule-drivers riding on their Mules, with Branches of Trees, drawn on the ground, in their hands, and to run down a Hill which was over against them, with great noise; which as soon as he perceived, he cried out to his Men, That his victorious Partner was come to his Assistance, and that now they should prevent him, and get to themselves the Honour of the day. By this means the *Romans* were filled with Confidence and Resolution, and furiously assailed the Enemy, and put them all to flight.

2. *F. Rutilius*, surnamed *Maximus*, being the fourth time Consul in the Country of the *Sammites*, having tried all means to break through the Enemies Battel, at last he drew off all his Pikemen from the Ranks, and sent them about with his Lieutenant General *Scipio*, commanding him to take a Hill, from whence they might break in upon the Backs of their Enemies; which being done accordingly, the *Romans* took Courage, and the *Sammites* were frightened, and seeking to fly they were cut in pieces.

3. When *Minutius Rufus* was General against the *Scordisci* and the *Daci*, being likely to be overcharged by the numbers of their Men that exceeded his, sent his Brother with a few Horse-men, together with all his Trumpeters, and commanded them that as soon as the Battel was begun they should suddenly shew themselves in divers places, with their Trumpets sounding in such places of the Mountains as might return and encrease the Eccho. This Appearance of a vast Multitude put such a Terror into the Enemies, that they turned their Backs and fled.

4. *Attilius Glabrio*, Consul, marching against the Army of *Antiochus*, which was coming into *Achaia* through the Streights of *Thermopylae*, had been stop'd by the Enemy with considerable loss, because of the disadvantage of the place of Battel, had he not sent round about *M. Porcius Cato*, who at that time being made a Collonel by the People of *Rome*, was in the Army. He sent him with a Party to assault the *Aetolians*, who held the Top of Mount *Callidromus* with a Guard: so that on a sudden he appeared behind the King's Camp upon a high Hill; which so terrified the Army of *Antiochus*, that they suffered the *Romans* to break in upon them on all sides; they fled, and left their Camp to their Enemies Pleasure.

5. *C. Sulpitius Petricus*, the Consul, warring against the *Gauls*, commanded his Mule-keepers to go privately into the next Mountains, and from thence, as soon as the Fight was begun, to shew themselves to the Armies riding as so many Horsemen. This Sight made the Enemy believe that some Assistance was come to the *Roman* Army, which caus'd them to yield the Victory when they had almost obtain'd it.

6. When

6. When *Marius* was to give Battel the next day to the *Teutoni*, a People of *Germany*, near the Waters *Sextia*, he sent *Marcellus* with a small Party of Horse and Foot by night, to fall upon the Backs of the Enemy; and better to shew the Appearance of an Army, commanded the Servants and Cooks to go also armed with a great part of the Beasts for Carriage, and Carts covered over with course Coverleds, the better to shew the likeness of Horsemen. He commanded them, that as soon as they saw the Battel begun, they should come down upon the Backs of the Enemy. This Appearance struck so great a Terror into the Enemy, that their most valiant men immediately fled.

7. *M. Licinius Crassus*, in the War against the Fugitives, when he was to lead out his Army near *Calumarcum* against *Castus* and *Canimocus*, Captains of the *Gauls*, sent twelve Bands or Cohorts commanded by *C. Promptinus* and *C. Martius Rufus*, his Lieutenants, round about a Hill; so that when the Battel was begun, this Party came behind the Enemy with a great Noise, and routed them in such a manner, that instead of fighting they all fled.

8. When *Marcellus* was afraid that the small number of his Men would be discovered by their hollowing, commanded all the Followers of his Army to encrease the hollowing: by this means he used to fright the Enemy with the Appearance of a great Army.

9. *Valerius Levinus*, in a Battel against *Pyrrhus* King of *Epirus*, having kill'd with his Sword a certain common Souldier, held it up all bloody in the sight of both Armies, telling them, that therewith he had slain *Pyrrhus*. Therefore the Enemies thinking that they had lost their Leader, and troubled

bled with this Lye, retreated in fear into their Camp.

10. *Jugurtha* fighting in *Numidia* against *C. Marius*, having the Knowledge of the *Latin* Tongue by his long living in the *Roman* Armies, advanc'd to the first Ranks, and declared with a loud Voice in *Latin*, That he had kill'd *C. Marius*; and by that means troubled many of the *Roman* Army.

11. *Mynnides* the *Athenian*, commanding in a doubtful Fight against the *Thebans*, suddenly ran to his right Wing, and cried out aloud, That the left had already got the Victory: by this policy he increas'd the Courage and Chearfulness of his Men, and so terrified the Enemy, that they fled and left him the Victory.

12. When *Cræsus* was to fight against a strong Party of Horse, he caused a great Company of Camels to meet them. The Horse were so troubled at the strangeness of the Sight, that they cast down their Riders, ran upon the Ranks of the Foot, and gave the Victory to the Enemy.

13. When *Pyrrhus* King of *Epyrus* was to fight for them of *Tarentum* against the *Romans*, he made use of his Elephants in the same manner to disorder the *Roman* Army.

14. And the *Carthaginians* also have often practis'd the same thing in their Fights against the *Romans*.

15. The Camp of the *Volsi* being seated near Bushes and Woods, *Canius* caused all that would burn to be carried to their Trenches, and there to be set on Fire: by this means he drove the enemy from thence.

16. *M. Crassus*, in the War of the Confederates, was in the same manner surpris'd with almost all his Army.

17. The

17. The *Spaniards*, in a Fight against *Hamilcar*, put before them, in the Front of the Battel, Carts full of combustible matter and Brimstone, drawn by Oxen; and when the Signal of the Fight was given, they set them on fire: then driving the Oxen to the Enemies, they broke through and discomfited them.

18. The *Falisci*, and such as were of the Faction of *Tarquinius*, apparelled many of their men in the Habit of Priests, with Torches and Snakes in their hands, sending them in a furious manner to disturb and disorder the *Roman* Army.

19. The *Vejentes* and *Fidenates*, with lighted Torches, practis'd the same Policy.

20. When *Atheas*, King of the *Scythians*, was to fight against a greater number of the *Triballi* than he had in his Army; he ordered the Women and Boys, and all such as were unfit to fight, to drive upon the last Battalion of the Enemy all the Oxen and Asses that he had, and to carry up an end Pikes in their hands: by which Appearance, he caused a Rumour to be spread amongst the Enemies, That Succours were come from the farthest part of *Scythia* to his Assistance; which so discouraged them, that they were overthrow'n.

## CHAP. V.

*Of Ambushes.*

## -Example 1.

**W**hen *Romulus* went against the Town of *Fidenæ*, he left a part of his Forces in Holes and Caves, and by a pretended Flight caused the Enemy to follow unadvisedly so far as his concealed Souldiers, who immediately rose up, assaulted the unwary and dispersed Enemy on all hands, and cut them in pieces.

2. *Q. Fabius Maximus*, Consul, being sent to aid the Inhabitants of *Sutrium* against the *Hetrusci*, oblig'd all the Enemies Troops to fall upon him, and afterwards in a seeming Fear retreated to a higher Ground; and when the Enemy pursued in a disorderly manner to the foot of the Hill, he fell upon them; and not only routed them, but took their Camp.

3. *T. Sempronius Gracchus*, General against the *Celtiberi*, a People of *Spain*, pretended a Fear, and caused his Army to keep within their Fortifications, only he sent out some of his Companies lightly armed to skirmish with the Enemy; but upon a sudden he caused them to retreat in again; which caused the Enemy to follow in pursuit: then did he assault them in good order, and made such a slaughter of them, that he took their Camp.

4. *Q. Metellus*, Consul, General in *Sicily* against *Hasdrubal*, was more wary and careful because of the Enemies vast numbers, and one hundred and thirty Elephants which they had in their Army; he seem-

seemed to be therefore diffident of his own Forces, and kept his Army within the Town of *Panormus*, having drawn a Ditch of a very great breadth before his Army: but after, when he saw in *Hasdrubal's* Army that in the Front the Elephants did march, he commanded the Spear-men to assault them with their Weapons, and to retreat immediately back again within their Fortifications. The Rulers of the Beasts being moved by this offer of a Fight, and disappointed, drove the Elephants into the very Ditch; in which they were no sooner stop'd and entangled, but they were either kill'd by the multitude of Darts cast at them, or driven back upon their own Army, which they disordered. Then *Metellus*, waiting for this Opportunity, sallied out of his Trenches with his whole Army, assaulted the *Carthaginians* on all sides, routed them, and took their Elephants.

5. *Tamiris* Queen of *Scythia*, fighting with *Cyrus* King of *Persia* upon an equal Advantage, by a pretended Fear led him into certain Streights, with which her Souldiers were well acquainted, and then turned back on a sudden, and by the Assistance of the place overcame him.

6. When the *Egyptians* were to fight a Battel in Fields in which two Marshes met, they hid themselves in the Sedge: and when the Battel was begun they pretended to fly; but in the Flight brought into their Ambush the Enemy, who running furiously in unknown Ground, stuck fast in the Mire, and by that means were circumvented.

7. *Viriatius*, who of a Robber turned General of the *Celtiberi*, a People of *Spain*, seemingly fled before the *Roman* Cavalry, untill he had led them into a place full of Pits, and craggy, with which he was so well acquainted, that he escaped with his Party

Party through a firm Path: then did he fall upon the *Romans* when they were fast in the mire, and in a ground which they knew not, and cut them in pieces.

8. *Fulvius*, General in the *Cimbrick War*, having his Camp near adjoyning to the Enemies, commanded his Cavalry to ride up to their Trenches to provoke them to fight, and then to pretend to fly and retreat back: When he had practised this Policy for certain days, the *Cimbri* followed them furiously, so that he took notice that their Camp was not so well mann'd as before; therefore with part of his Army he caused his usual Custom to be observed, with another Party of light-harnessed Souldiers he marched to the other side of the Enemies Camp undiscovered; and when he saw that they were gone out in Pursuit, as their manner was, he suddenly assaulted them, broke through the Trenches that were forsaken, and took the Camp.

9. *Cn. Fulvius*, when an Army of the *Falisci* far greater than the *Romans* was entered into their Borders, caus'd certain Houses far from his Camp to be set on fire by some of his Souldiers; and the Enemies thinking that they had been done by some of their Men, in hopes of Booty march'd out into several Parties, which weaken'd the main Body.

10. *Alexander* marching out of *Epirus* against the *Illyrians*, placed a small Party in Ambush, and caused some of his own Men, in the Habit of *Illyrians*, to destroy and burn his own Country of *Epirus*; which when the *Illyrians* saw, they began to scatter and to plunder every where; and the more confidently, because the Spoilers served them as Scouts, who purposely decoyed them into an uneven ground, and set upon them, and routed them.

11. *Lep-*

11. *Leptenes*, also General of *Syracusa* against the *Carthaginians*, commanded his own Country to be destroyed, and certain Villages and Castles to be set on fire, that the *Carthaginians* might think that this was done by their own Party, which caused them to march out to help, and to fall into an Ambush that routed them.

12. *Maharbal*, being sent General against the *Rebellious Africans*, knew that they were greedy of Wine; He therefore caused a Vessel of Wine to be seasoned with Mandrake, that hath a stupifying Vertue next to Poison. Afterwards, when he came to skirmish a little with the Enemy, he sounded a Retreat out of design, and in the dead of the night, having left in his Camp some of his Baggage and all his Wine, poisoned with that Ingredient, he pretended to fly. When the barbarous Enemy had taken his Camp, they gave themselves over to rejoicing, and to drink freely of the poisoned Wine; which caused them to lye on the Ground stupified as dead. At that Instant *Maharbal* returned with his Army, took and slew them without resistance.

13. *Hannibal*, knowing that his own and the *Romans* Camp was in a place that wanted Wood, left behind him purposely in a desert place many Heads of Cattel within his Camp; of which, when the *Romans* had taken possession, in this great want of Wood loaded themselves with raw and unwholesome Meat. Then did *Hannibal* return in the night with his Army, and finding them secure and distemper'd with raw Flesh, he made a great slaughter of them.

14. When *Tiberius Gracchus* was General in *Spain*, he understood that the Enemy was poor, and wanted Trade; he left therefore his Camp furnished with all manner of Dainties for Food; which when

## 74 *The Stratagems of War.*

when the Enemy had taken, and fill'd themselves without measure, he brought back his Army, and suddenly over-power'd them.

15. They who made War against the *Erythraans*, took one of their Scouts standing in an Enemies place, and kill'd him, giving his Cloaths to one of their own Souldiers, who made such Signs to the *Erythraans*, as that they were brought thereby into an Ambuscado.

16. Whereas the *Arabians* have a noted Custom amongst them, to signifie the coming of an Enemy, by day with Smoak, by night with Fire: they therefore ordered this to be continually practis'd, but when the Enemy was approaching to forbear the Custom; who, when they saw no Fires, imagined that their Coming was not known: they entering therefore too hastily into the Borders, were destroyed.

17. *Alexander the Macedonian*, when the Enemy had fortified their Camp in a high Wood, took a Party of his Men, commanding those who were left behind to kindle Fires as formerly, and to shew the Appearance of the whole Army: in the mean while he led that select Party by unknown ways round about to the higher Ground, from whence he assaulted and drove away the Enemies.

18. *Memnon King of Rhodes*, being stronger than the Enemy in *Calvary*, and they abiding on Hills for shelter, resolved to bring them down with this Policy: He sent some of his Souldiers into their Camp, as Run-a-ways, to inform them that *Memnon's* Army was already vexed with a sore Sedition, and that some part of it was already gone: and that he might confirm them in that belief, he ordered some little Forts in every side to be fortified in the Enemies sight, as if they intended to refuge themselves

## *The Stratagems of War.* 75

selves there who were at variance: when they who were in the Mountains heard of this, they came down upon the plain Ground, and while they were assaulting the Castles and Forts, they were surrounded by the Cavalry of *Memnon*.

19. *Harridas*, King of the *Molossi*, being at Wars with *Ardies the Illyrian*, who had a more numerous Army, sent away all his weak People into the neighbouring Country of *Aetolia*, to disperse the same that he intended to deliver up his Cities and Wealth into the hands of the *Aetolians*: in the mean while he placeth all such as could bear Arms in Ambush in the Mountains and rocky Places. The *Illyrians*, fearing lest the *Aetolians* should take possession of all that belong'd to the *Molossi*, hasted to the Plunder without order. Then did *Harridas* come out of his Ambush, assaulted them unawares, and scattered up and down, routed, and put them to Flight.

20. *T. Labienus*, while he was *Cesar's* Lieutenant against the *Gauls*, before the Arrival of the *Germans*, whom he knew would come to their Assistance, desired to fight with them, but made shew of being jealous of his own Forces; for that purpose he planted his Camp on the other side of the River, and appointed to march away on the next day. The *Gauls* thought that he had fled away; they resolved therefore to pass over the River that was between them. But while they were busie in passing over the River, he had brought about his Army upon them, and cut them in pieces.

21. When *Hannibal* understood that the Camp of *Fulvius the Roman General* was negligently and ill provided, and that he was apt to attempt many things without Discretion; by break of Day, when the thick Mists caused the Air to be dark, he shew-



ed a few Souldiers to the *Roman* Sentinels, against whom *Fulvius* immediately marched with his Army: in the mean while *Hannibal* assaulted and took the Camp of *Fulvius* on the other side. By that means falling upon the back of the *Romans*, he cut off eight thousand of their stoutest Souldiers, with their General.

22. The same *Hannibal*, when the *Roman* Army was divided between the Dictator *Fabius* and *Minutius* the Master of the Horse, and that *Fabius* waited for a fair Opportunity, but *Minutius* desired earnestly to fight him, he placed his Camp in a Plain that was between the two Armies, and hid a Party of Foot amongst craggy Rocks, whilst he sent out some Troops to invite forth the Enemy, and take possession of an higher Ground near adjoining: when *Minutius* led forth his Army to cut them off, the Ambush which *Hannibal* had plac'd rose up on a sudden, and had defeated and destroyed *Minutius's* Army if *Fabius* had not succour'd them in their need.

23. The same *Hannibal*, when at the River *Trebia* he had in fight the Camp of the Consul *Sempronius Longus*, a River running between them, placed in Ambush, in the coldest time of Winter, *Mago*, with a select Company, whilst he had ordered the *Numidian* Cavalry to ride about the *Roman* Camp to work upon the Credulity of *Sempronius*, commanding them at the first Assault of the *Romans* to retreat back through the known Fords to his Army: when the Consul had unadvisedly assaulted and followed them with his fasting Army through the River in a most bitter cold Season, which made the *Roman* Souldiers shake; then did *Hannibal* encounter them with his Men, whom he had prepared with Fire, Oyl, and Food, when the Enemy

my was benum'd with Cold, and in want of Necessaries: and *Mago* fail'd not to play his part, for he fell upon them behind in good order.

24. The same *Hannibal*, at the Lake *Thrasymenus*, finding a narrow way that led to the Foot of a Mountain, and into open Fields, pretended to fly, and through the Streights he escaped into the level Ground, where he encamped; but in the night he appointed some Souldiers, and plac'd them about the Hill which was over him, and in the sides of the Streights: the next Morning by break of day, being favour'd by a Mist, he drew up his Army. *Flaminius* followed him as if he had fled; but when he was in the Streights he foresaw not the Ambush till he found himself encompassed in before, behind, and on all sides, and till his Army was totally destroyed.

25. The same *Hannibal*, fighting against *Junius* the Dictator, in the middle of the Night commanded six hundred Horsemen, divided into several Troops, in their turns, without ceasing, to shew themselves about the *Roman* Camp: by that means, when the *Romans* were tired by watching all night, and standing upon the Rampires in the Rain, which then happened to fall continually, and when *Junius* began to sound a Retreat, then did *Hannibal* lead on his Souldiers well refreshed, and assaulted the *Roman* Camp.

26. *Epaminondas*, the *Theban* General, when the *Lacedamonians* defended at *Athens* the *Peloponnesus* with a Fortification in the same manner, he disturbed the Enemy all night by a few light armed Souldiers, and afterwards by break of day he drew up his Men when the *Lacedamonians* were retreating, and suddenly with his whole Army, which he kept quiet, he broke thro' their Fortifications naked of Defendants.

27. *Hannibal*, having drawn up his Army at the Town of *Canna*, commanded six hundred *Numidian* Horsemen to fly to the *Romans*, and for a greater assurance to them, delivered to them their Swords and Bucklers, falling back into the last Ranks: but when the Battel was first begun, they drew their short Swords, which they had concealed for the purpose, and taking up the Bucklers of the slain, they fell upon the Back of the *Roman* Army, and destroyed them.

28. *Japyges*, a People of *Calabria*, when *P. Licinius* was Proconsul, delivered up their Towns, as if they had yielded themselves to the *Romans*; but being received, and placed in the hindermost Ranks, they fell upon their Backs.

29. *Scipio Africanus*, having against him two Camps of Enemies, one commanded by *Syphax*, the other belonging to the *Carthaginians*, resolved to assault *Syphax's* Camp in the night, and to set it on fire, for there was there much combustible matter, that he might from his own Camp cut off the *Numidians* in the Hurly-burly: and because he knew that the *Carthaginians* would adventure to go out to succour their Companions, he laid an Ambush to receive them. All this fell out according to his Expectation and Desire.

30. *Mithridates*, having been often overcome by the Valour of *Lucullus*, assaulted him in an Ambuscado, when he had corrupted and persuaded a certain man of great Strength, named *Adathas*, to fly to the Enemy. This Traitor promised and engaged his Faith to the *Romans*, that he might perform his intended Wickedness, which he stoutly endeavoured, but in vain; for being admitted by *Lucullus* into the number of his Horsemen, he was secretly watch'd, because they did not give suddenly credit to

to a Run-away, neither was it fit to discourage others from coming over to them: afterwards, in many Sallies and Encounters having done good Service, he got himself into Credit. He chose a time when the *Principes* were sent away, and they were retired to the innermost Rooms of the General's Quarters, and all was quiet in the Camp. An accident favour'd *Lucullus*, for he found him at that time departed to his Rest, weary with his evening Cares and Employments, having entertain'd Company very late: when therefore he offered to go in, as if he would reveal some sudden and important Matter, he was resolutely kept out by the Servants, who were mindful of their Lords Health and Repose; which caus'd him to doubt that he was suspected; he therefore took Horse, which he had ready before the Gate, and returned, without effecting any thing, to *Mithridates*.

31. When *Sertorius*, in *Spain*, near the Town of *Lauro*, had his Camp adjoining to the Camp of *Pompey*, and that there was but two Countries only there able to furnish them with Fodder, one near, the other at a distance; he caused his Souldiers lightly armed frequently to visit that Country that was nearest, but forbade them so much as to enter into that which was at a distance: by this means he made his Enemies believe, that the farthest Country was the safest; which, when the Souldiers of *Pompey* went to visit, he sent *Otharius Gracimus* with ten Companies armed in the *Roman* manner, and ten other Companies of *Spaniards* lightly armed, with *Tarquinius Priscus* at the head of two thousand Horse, to lye in Ambush for the Forragers. They punctually and courageously performed their Orders; for having well understood the Country, they hid these Forces in a neighbouring Wood in

the Night; so that in the Front they placed the *Spaniards* lightly armed, and fittest for a sudden Surprise and Skirmish; next to them such as carried Bucklers, and in the Rear, the Horsemen: and that the neighing of the Horses might not discover the Design, he commanded them to rest and keep silence untill the third hour of the day. But when *Pompey's* Souldiers were upon their return laden with Fodder and secure, and that such as kept the Guards were invited by the Quietness of the Enemy to march out and seek also for Forrage, first the *Spaniards* sallied out, and fell furiously, as the manner of their Nation was, upon such as were wandering up and down, wounding and cutting them when they least expected it. And before *Pompey* could resist and stop them, the Party armed with Bucklers broke out of the Wood, and routed such as were rallying together in some order: as they were flying, the Horsemen were sent out to pursue and slay them all that space that was between them and the *Roman* Camp; and there was care taken that none should escape, for the other two hundred and fifty Horsemen, being sent galloping before by a nearer way, returned, and met such as were flying first, before they could come to *Pompey's* Camp. As soon as *Pompey* understood it, he sent out a Legion, commanded by *Laelius*, to succour his Men; at whose approach, the Horsemen drew up on the right hand, as if they had given place: afterwards, they fell by this means upon the back of the Legion, at the same time when such as pursued after the Forragers met with it: thus was this poor Legion destroyed between two Parties of the Enemy: and when *Pompey* led out his whole Army to assist and relieve it, *Sertorius* also appeared with his Army on the top of the Hills, ready for the encounter,

ter, and hindered *Pompey* from proceeding farther: so that besides a two-fold loss procured by the same Policy, he stop'd and made him a Spectator of the Defeat and Destruction of his Men. This was the first Fight between *Sertorius* and *Pompey*. Ten thousand of *Pompey's* Army were slain, and all their Carriages were lost, saith *Livius*.

32. *Pompey*, in *Spain*, having appointed before such as should rise out of a secret place to give the assault, pretended that he was afraid, and by that means led the pursuing Enemy into difficult places: afterwards, when he saw his time, he set upon them before, and on each side, and cut them all in pieces, and their Captain *Perpenna* he took Prisoner.

33. When the same *Pompey* was General in *Armenia* against *Mithridates*, who was the strongest in Horse, he hid three thousand lightly armed, with five hundred Horsemen, in the night, in Bushes which were between the two Camps. The next Morning betimes he sent out his Horsemen as far as the Enemies Guards, so drawn up in Battalia, that when he should begin to fight with all the Enemies Cavalry, they should in good order give back by degrees, untill such time as they might afford time for the Ambuscado to rise behind, who were there on purpose. All which happening according to his desire, with those Troops that seem'd to retreat he cut in pieces the middle Battalion of his Enemy which was out of order, and with his Footmen that enter'd pell-mell, he kill'd their Horse; so that in that Battel he ruin'd the King's greatest Trust which he repos'd in his Horsemen.

34. *M. Crassus*, in the War against the Fugitives, near the Mountain *Cathena*, fortified two Camps near that of the Enemies, but in the Night

chang'd the Souldiers of the one, and received them into the other, leaving still the General's Tent in the greatest Camp, the better to deceive the enemy; he himself drew out all his Forces and made a halt at the foot of the said Mountain, and having divided his Cavalry, commanded *L. Quintius* with one part to face *Spartacus*, but not to engage in a Fight with him; with the other part of the Cavalry he encounter'd with the *Gauls* and *Germans*, that were of the Faction of *Castus* and *Gannicus*, but ordered them to draw them by degrees, by a dissembled Fight, to the place where he himself stood ready in Battel; whom, when the barbarous People followed, the Cavalry fell into the Wings, and suddenly the *Roman Army* open'd, and fell on with a Shout; so that thirty five thousand Souldiers were there destroyed with their Commanders, as *Livius* writes, five *Roman Eagles* were recovered, six and twenty Colours, with much Spoils, were taken, and amongst them five bundle of Rods with Axes.

35. *C. Cassius*, General in *Syria* against the *Parths*, put his Cavalry forth in the Van, but hid his Infantry behind in difficult and steep places: afterwards, when the Cavalry began to retreat, and to save it self by known ways, he drew the *Parthian Army* into the Ambush that was provided for them, and cut them in pieces.

36. When the *Parthians* and *Labienus* were become proud of their Successes and Victories, *Ventidius* the *Roman General*, by keeping in his Army together in their Camp, drew them upon him: and when he found them in a disadvantageous Post, he fell upon them in a Sally, and so overthrew them, that they forsook *Labienus*, and departed out of the *Roman Territories*.

37. The

37. The same *Ventidius*, being General against the *Parthians*, commanded by *Pharnastanes*, and having with him but a small number of Souldiers, perceived that the enemies grew more bold because they exceeded them in number; therefore he posted at one side of his Camp, in a dark Valley, eighteen Companies, and behind the Foot he drew up his Cavalry: then he sent a very few Souldiers to attack the enemy; who pretending to fly, drew the *Parthians*, who greedily pursued after them beyond the place where the Ambush lay, which rising at that instant, kill'd the *Parthian General Pharnastanes*, and put the Pursuers to flight.

38. *C. Caesar*, when his Camp and that of *Afranius* stood in two Plains one against another, and that it concern'd either of them to be Masters of the neighbouring Hills, found it difficult to get them because of the steep Rocks before him; he therefore began to retreat back, as if he would return to the River *Herda*. The want of Necessaries persuaded *Afranius* that this was his Purpose: but after a little while, he took a small compass about to get the Command of the Hills; which when the Army of *Afranius* perceiv'd, they were much troubled, as if their Camp had been taken; they therefore in all haste ran towards those Hills. *Caesar* foreseeing this, partly with his Foot which he sent to meet them, and partly with his Horse which he appointed to fall upon their Backs, he overthrew them.

39. *Antonius*, at a City of *Italy*, understanding that the Consul *Pansa* was come, placed an Ambush in the Woods near the *Emilian way*, assaulted his Troops, and put them to flight, and gave him such a mortal Wound, that he died a few days after.

40. King

40. King *Juba*, in *Africa*, in the Civil War, caused *Curio* the *Roman* General to rejoyce when he made as if he would return into his own Country. *Curio* being deceived by that vain Confidence, pursued after *Sabora* the King's Commander, so far that he came into open Fields, where he was beset with the *Numidian* Cavalry, lost his Army, and his Life also.

41. *Melanthus*, the *Athenian* Captain, when he was challenged by *Xanthus* the *Bœotian*, the Enemies King, and came to fight him in a Duel; as soon as he drew near cried to him, Thou dost basely, *Xanthus*, and against our Agreement, for thou art come followed by a Second to encounter with one single man: when he began to wonder and look back who it was accompanied him, he run him in behind, and kill'd him.

42. *Iphicrates*, the *Athenian* General, understanding at the *Chersonesus* of *Greece* that *Anaxibius* the *Lacedæmonian* Commander led an Army by Land, took out of his Ships a very strong Party of Souldiers, and laid them in Ambush, but all the Ships he caused to sail away, as if they had been laden with Souldiers; and when the *Lacedæmonians* were secure, and never dreamed of an Assault in their March, he fell upon them in the Rear, and routed them.

43. When the *Liburni*, a People of *Dalmatia*, besieged certain marish and shelvy Places by the Sea, they discovered only their Heads, and made the Enemy believe that it was the wide Sea; by that means they took a Galley that in pursuit of them stuck fast in the quick-sand or Bank.

44. *Alcibiades*, the *Athenian* Commander in the Heilespont against *Numidarus* the *Lacedæmonian* General, having a numerous Army, and many Ships, landed

landed a Party of his Men in the night, and some of his Ships he caused to lye concealed behind a certain Promontory or High-land, whilst he with a few only fit to provoke the Enemies Contempt, fled before them till he had brought them into the Snare: he then forc'd them to fly, and to save themselves on Land; but as they went on Shore, he cut them off by that Party that he had landed on purpose.

45. The same *Alcibiades*, being ready to fight a Battel at Sea, fixed a certain number of Masts in a High-land that advanc'd into the Water, commanding those who were there to keep Guard, that as soon as the Battel was begun they should hang out their Sails. By this means it happen'd that the Enemies imagining that there was another Fleet coming to his Assistance, fled away.

46. *Mammon* of *Rhodes*, having in his Fleet two hundred Ships ready for a Sea-fight, and desirous to draw the Enemies to a Battel, commanded that but a few of his Vessels should have their Masts up, and that they should sayl before: When therefore the Enemies saw the number of the Masts, and by them judged of the number of the Ships, they boldly came out to fight, but were easily over-power'd by the greater number of Vessels.

47. When *Timotheus* the *Athenian* General was to fight at Sea against the *Lacedæmonians*, and that their Fleet came forward well provided for the encounter, he sent twenty of his nimblest Ships, which by all means should sail here and there, and weary the Enemy in the pursuit; which as soon as he perceived was effected, and that they began to be heavy, he then set upon them, and easily overcame such as were out of order, and wearied out.

## C H A P. VI.

*Of giving the Enemy liberty to escape, lest he should out of despair renew the Fight.*

## Example 1.

**W**hen the *Gauls*, after that Battel which was given when *Camillus* was General, desired Boats and Vessels to pass over the *Tiber*, the Senate gave order, that they should be furnish'd with Boats and Provisions for their Journey. And when some of the same People fled through the Country *Pomptinus*, there was a way allowed them which is now called *Gallica*.

2. *L. Martius*, the Roman Knight, whom the Army made General, after the two *Scipios* were killed, surpris'd and overcame the *Carthaginians*; but, lest they should fight more fiercely out of Despair, he caused his Ranks to be opened, and gave them liberty to escape; and when they were scatter'd and fled, he destroyed them behind without any damage or hazard to his Army.

3. When *C. Caesar* had shut in the *Germans*, and that they did fight more stoutly, he gave them liberty to depart, and in the Flight he fell upon them with more advantage.

4. *Hannibal*, at the Lake *Thrasymenus*, inclosed in a Party of *Romans*, who resisted him most desperately; he therefore opened them a way to escape; and as they were flying he cut them in pieces without any damage to his Men.

5. An-

5. *Antigonus*, King of *Macedonia*, besieged a Party of *Ætolians*, and brought them to so great a Famine, that they resolved to sally out, and dye valiantly. He therefore gave them a way and opportunity to fly away; by that means having disappointed their impetuous Resolution, he followed them in the Rear and destroyed them.

6. *Agésilas* the *Lacedæmonian*, fighting in a Battel against the *Thebans*, and understanding that the Enemy, being shut up by the narrowness of the place, fought out of Despair more furiously, open'd the Ranks of his Army, and gave them liberty to depart, but after he pursued them, fell in upon their Rear, and routed them.

7. *Cn. Manlius*, the Consul, returning from the Fight, found that the *Roman Camp* was taken by the *Hetrurians*; he ordered therefore all the Gates to be so well guarded, that the Enemies when they were shut in were so furiously exasperated, that they killed him in the heat of the Fight: which when his Lieutenants took notice of, they caused on one side the Guards to be withdrawn, and a Passage for the *Hetrurians* to escape; but they fell upon them in their Retreat, and by the coming in of the other Consul they cut them in pieces.

8. *Themistocles*, when *Xerxes* was overthrown, hindered the *Grecians* from breaking the Bridge, as they had resolved, because it was more Wisdom to expell and shut him out of *Europe*, than to force him out of Despair to fight: he therefore sent a Messenger to him to advise him in what danger he was in, unless he made more speed to pass over into *Asia*.

9. *Pyrrhus*, King of *Epirus*, having taken a certain City, and finding by the shutting of the Gates that he had reduced such as were within to such Despair, that they did fight the more desperately, he gave them liberty to depart.

10. The same *Pyrhus*, amongst the other Directions given to a General in his Book, he recommends this; That we must not press nor pursue after an Enemy that is in Flight too unmercifully, first, lest he should be driven, out of necessity, to resist and stop a victorious Course; secondly, that thereby we might oblige an Enemy at another time to yield the Day the sooner, and at an easier rate, when he shall consider that the Conquerours will not pursue too eagerly after the Lives of such as are forced to fly.

## CHAP. VII.

### *How to dissemble ill Successes.*

#### Example 1.

**T**ullius Hostilius, King of the Romans, being engaged in a Fight against the *Veientes*, when the *Albani* forsook the Roman Army and withdrew to the neighbouring Hills, and that the Romans were much discouraged, he cried out to his Souldiers, that the *Albani* were departed by his Command, to encompass the Enemies about: which Policy terrified the *Veientes*, encouraged the Romans, and when the Victory was almost lost he recover'd it by this cunning Lye.

2. When *L. Sylla* was in the middle of a Battel, and that a chief Commander of his Army withdrew to the Enemy with a considerable Party of Horse, declared to his Souldiers, that what was done was by his Order: in so saying he prevented the Wonder

der and Trouble of his Men, and fill'd them with hopes of some benefit that would follow that Contrivance and Policy.

3. The same *Sylla*, when his Auxiliary Troops which were sent by him were surrounded by the Enemy, and overthrown, fearing that this Loss would terrifie his whole Army, he declared to them, that these Auxiliaries, who had a purpose to forsake him, were by him brought in a difficult place purposely to punish them. Thus with a pretence of Revenge he covered and concealed an apparent Loss, and confirmed and satisfied the Courages of his other Souldiers by this Persuasion.

4. *Scipio*, when the Ambassadors of *Syphax* came to him with this Message from their King, That he should not, out of Confidence upon his Assistance and Confederacy, pass over from *Sicily* into *Africa*; fearing lest his Souldiers should be discourag'd by the Denial of this foreign help, sent hastily the Ambassadors away, and spread abroad the Rumour, That *Syphax* of his own Accord had sent for him over.

5. *Q. Sertorius*, when he was in the middle of a Fight, kill'd a Souldier with his Sword that came to him with the News that *Herculeius* his Lieutenant was slain, that he might not give notice of that loss to others, and discourage his Men that were yet fighting.

6. *Alcibiades*, the Athenian General, when he was beset in a Fight by the *Abydeni*, and on a sudden saw a Messenger running to him with sad News, forbade him to deliver his Message openly: afterwards, being privately questioned by *Pharnabazus*, the King's Vice-roy, he told him, that his Fleet was in danger to be taken by the Enemy; which concealing from both Enemies and his Souldiers, he ended

ended the Battel, and immediately after had his Army to free the Fleet from danger, and relieve his Men in distress.

7. When *Hannibal* was come into *Italy*, three thousand of the *Carpetani*, a People of *Spain*, forsook his Army: and that the rest might not follow their bad example, he publish'd immediately abroad, That he had sent them away; and to verifie this Saying, he dispatch'd away a few home to their Houses, who were of no great Use in his Army.

8. *L. Lucullus*, seeing the *Macedonian* Cavalry, who were come to his Assistance, on a sudden to run away to the Enemy, commanded the Trumpets to sound a Charge, and sent Troops to follow and second them: they thinking that the Battel was begun, let fly their Darts at the cowardly *Macedonians*; who seeing that they could not be admitted by the Enemy, and that their own Party followed them close at the Heels, were necessitated in good order to turn and encounter with the Enemy.

9. *Datames*, the *Persian* General against *Autophradates* in *Cappadocia*, finding that some of his Cavalry were ready to depart to the Enemy, commanded all the rest to accompany him, and follow the Run-aways; whom, when he had overtaken, he praised them highly, because they had gone before him to meet the Enemy so cheerfully; he exhorted them therefore to assault the Enemy with Courage. Shame made the Run-aways to repent, and to alter their purpose, which they conceived was not discovered.

10. *T. Quintius*, surnamed *Capitolinus*, the Consul, when the *Romans* were retreating, told them, That in the other Wing the Enemies were fled; by this Lye he confirmed the Courage of his Souldiers, and got the Victory.

11. *Cn.*

11. *Cn. Manlius*, fighting against the *Hetrusci*, when his Partner *Fabius* was wounded in the left Wing, which he commanded, and that some of the Army retreated because they thought that the Consul had been kill'd, met them with a Party of Horse, and called out to them, that his Partner was yet alive, and that in the other Wing he had beaten the Enemy. By this Constancy he encouraged his Souldiers, and obtained the Victory.

12. When *Marius* march'd against the *Cimbri* and *Teutoni*, and that the Officers of his Army, who were appointed to chuse a place for his Camp, had pitch'd upon such a Place, through Indiscretion, that all their Water was in the Enemies Power, and that his Army wanted and ask'd for Water; he shewed to them the Enemies Army with his finger, and told them, that they must fetch it from the Enemies Camp: by which Intimation, he persuaded his Men to drive them immediately from thence.

13. *T. Labienus*, after the Battel of *Pharsalia*, when *Pompey's* Party was overcome, and he fled to *Dyrrhachium*, related the Truth with many Lies. He confess'd the Conclusion of the Battel, but affirm'd the loss to be equal on both sides, by a desperate Wound that *Cesar* had received. By this Invention he confirmed such as remained of *Pompey's* side, and made them more bold.

14. When *M. Cato* unadvisedly landed at *Ambra* in a little Boat, at the same time that the Ships of his Confederates were assaulted by the *Ætolians*, though he had no Forces with him, yet he began to make sign by his Voice and Gesture, by which he did seem to call and command some of his Ships to follow him. By this Invention he struck a terror into the Enemies, as if they were near at hand, and

in



in fight. The *Ætolians* therefore forsook the Assault, that they might not be over-power'd by the coming in of the *Roman Fleet*.

## CHAP. X.

### Of restoring and renewing a Fight by Constancy and Courage.

#### Example 1.

**W**hen *Servius Tullius* was a Youth, in that Battel in which King *Tarquinius* encounter'd with the *Sabins*, perceiving the Ensign-bearers behaved themselves slothfully and cowardly, he snatch'd the Colours and cast it amongst the Enemies; for the Recovery of which they fought so fiercely, that with their Colours they got the Victory.

2. *Furius Agrippa*, the Consul, when his Wing began to fall back, took the Colours from an Ensign and cast it amongst his Enemies, the *Hernici* and the *Æqui*: by this means he restored the Fight again, for the *Romans* fell on very cheerfully for the Recovery of their Colours.

3. *T. Quintius*, surnamed *Capitolinus*, the Consul, cast a Colours amongst the Enemies, the *Falisci*, commanding his Souldiers to recover it again.

4. *M. Furius Camillus*, a Tribune of the Souldiers, elected in the place of Consuls, when his Army stood still in the face of the Enemy, catch'd a Colours from an Ensign, and march'd against the Enemies,

mies, the *Volsci* and the *Latins*, and made all the rest to follow for shame.

5. *Salvius Pelignus* practis'd the same thing in the *Persian War*.

6. *Q. Furius*, when his Army fled, met them, and protested, that he would receive none of them into his Camp unless they return'd with Victory; he led them therefore back, and overthrew the Enemies.

7. *Scipio*, at the City *Numantia* in *Spain*, when he saw his Army retreating, declared to them, That he would treat them as Enemies whosoever did return back into the Camp.

8. *Servilius Priscus*, the Dictator, when he commanded the Colours to advance against the Enemies, the *Falisci*, and that an Ensign delayed to obey him, he commanded him to be kill'd. This example so affrighted his Souldiers, that they assaulted the Enemy courageously.

9. *Cossus Cornelius*, Master of the Horse against the *Fidenates*, shewed the same example.

10. *Tarquinius*, in the Battel against the *Sabins*, when the Horsemen were loth to fall on, took from them their Bridles, and commanded them to prick on their Horses, and to break through the enemies.

11. *M. Atilius* the Consul, in the *Samnitick War*, when part of his Army fled back to his Camp, marched against them with another Party, telling them, that they must either fight with him and their good Citizens, unless they would return against the enemy. By this means he led them all back into the Fight.

12. *L. Sylla*, when the Legions began to yield to the Army of *Mithridates*, led by *Archelaus*, he drew his Sword, and ran into the first Battalion, and

and calling to his Souldiers, told them, If any enquir'd where they had left their General, they might answer, fighting in *Bœotia*: this made them so much ashamed, that they all followed him.

13. When *Julius Caesar* saw his Men give back at *Munda*, he caus'd his Horse to be led out of his fight, and cast himself on foot into the first Battalion: The Souldiers being ashamed to forsake their General, returned to the Fight again.

14. King *Philip* was afraid that his Men would never be able to resist the Fury of the *Scythians*; he placed therefore behind them his most trusty Horsemen, commanding them that they should not suffer any of their Fellow-Souldiers to return out of the Battel, and that if any were resolv'd to fly they should kill them: by this threatening he made the most timorous to chuse rather to be kill'd by the enemy than by their own men, and got the Victory.

## CHAP. IX.

*Of the prosecuting the remaining part of a War if all things succeed.*

### Example 1.

**W**HEN *C. Marius* had overcome in a Battel the *Teutoni*, a People of *Germany*, he encompass'd about the rest the next Night that followed the Fight, and caus'd a few of his Army to fright them with continual Noise, that they might

might be kept waking all night: by that means, the next Morning, they being tired with watching, were more easily brought to yield to him.

2. When *Claudius Nero* had overpower'd the *Carthaginian Army*, which *Hafdrubal* led out of *Spain* into *Italy*, he cast the Head of *Hafdrubal* into *Hannibal's Camp*: by which Action he sorely afflicted and discouraged him with the assurance of the loss of his Brother *Asdrubal*, who was slain, and with the despair of Assistance from the approaching Army.

3. *L. Sylla* shew'd openly, upon Pikes, to them of the City *Praneste*, who were there besieged, the Heads of the Captains that were slain in Fight, that he might overcome the stiffness of the obstinate Inhabitants.

4. In the like manner *Arminius*, the Commander of the *Germans*, caus'd the Heads of them whom he had kill'd in Fight, to be held up and shew'd near the enemies Camp.

5. *Domitius Corbulo*, besieging *Tigranocerta*, perceiv'd that the *Armenians* were likely to bear the Siege a while; he therefore took a certain Man of *Megista* in *Lycia*, punished him with Death, and shot his Head with a *Roman Engine* into the Walls of the Town: the Head by chance fell in the midst of their Common-Council, which was then met together; at the sight of which they were so affrighted, that they immediately surrendred themselves.

6. *Hermocrates* of *Syracuse*, having overcome in Battel the *Athenians*, was jealous that the great number of Prisoners that he had taken would not be well guarded, because the Success of the Fight was like to oblige the Conquerours to give themselves over to feasting and security; he therefore spread

## 96 *The Stratagems of War.*

spread abroad the Rumour, That the next Night the Enemies Cavalry would come upon them; which Report made the Guards to be kept with more diligence.

7. The same General, having had good success in War, and for that reason, because his Souldiers began to be too secure, and to give themselves over to Sleeping and Wine; he appointed a Run-away to come into his Camp, and to declare, That he was escaped thither by Flight to admonish them that there were Ambushes laid for them in every place, by the Inhabitants of *Syracuse*: the fear of them brought his Army to a condition of fighting; so that when they came to assault him in his Camp, they were driven into the Ditches, and were overpowered.

### CHAP. X.

*Of remedying ill Successes when things happen contrary.*

#### Example 1.

**T** *Didius*, having had a very fierce Battel in *Spain*, which ended by the coming in of the Night, and was remarkable for the great number of Souldiers slain on both sides, caus'd many of the dead Bodies of his Men to be buried in the dark Night; so that the next day, when the *Spaniards*, who went to perform the same Office to their dead Souldiers, because they found a greater number

## *The Stratagems of War.* 97

ber of their People slain than of the *Romans*, concluding from thence that they were overcome, and yielded to the Articles of the *Roman General*.

2. *T. Martius*, a *Roman Knight*, who commanded the rest of the Army of the two *Scipio's* who were slain, having near him, at a few Miles distance, two Camps of the *Carthaginians*, encouraged the Souldiers to assault, in the dead of the Night, the next Camp. He found them out of order, and secure, because of their former Victories; so that falling upon them in that condition, he left none alive to tell their woful Destruction and Slaughter: and the same night, having given a little time to his Souldiers to rest, he prevented the report of the Execution, and assaulted the other Camp; so that he had twice the same Success, and the *Carthaginians* were destroyed every where. By that means he restored to the People of *Rome* the Countries of *Spain* which they had lost.

### CHAP. XI.

*Of preserving such as are wavering in their Obedience and Fidelity.*

#### Example 1.

**W**hen *P. Valerius* was afraid of the Perfidiousness of the Inhabitants of *Epidaurus*, because he had but small Forces with him, provided, at a distance from the Town, some *Gymnick Plays*: and when almost all the City

F  
went

went out to see them, he shut the Gates, and would not suffer the Citizens to return in again till they had delivered some of their principal Men as Hostages.

2. *Cn. Pompeius*, having a Jealousie of the *Catinenses*, and fearing that they would not admit his Guards within their Walls, intreated them in the mean while to receive his sick men, and suffer them to refresh themselves amongst them; which being granted, he sent the stoutest of his Souldiers in the Habit and Garb of sick men, and with them took the City, and kept it for his Use.

3. When *Alexander* had overcome and conquered *Thracia*, and he was to pass over into *Asia*, because he feared that after his Departure they would take up Arms against him, he took with him, with an honourable Pretence, their Kings, their Governours, and all such as did seem to be concerned for the Recovery of the Liberty that they had lost; he left behind the common People, and appointed them Governours out of the meanest of them. By this means he obliged their Princes by many good Deeds, so that they would not rebell against him; and for the common People, they were not able to do him mischief when they were deprived of the Assistance of their Princes.

4. When *Antipater* saw the first Army of them of *Nestos*, which upon the News of the Death of *Alexander* were gathered together to disturb his Government, he pretended that he knew not the intent of their coming, but gave them Thanks, because he supposed that they designed to assist *Alexander* against the *Lacedaemonians*; and assured them that he would give the King an Account by Letter of their Readiness to serve him. But because he had then no need of their help, he advis'd them to de-

depart home to their Houses. By this subtle Speech he delivered himself from the danger of a Rebellion that threatned him.

5. *Scipio Africanus* being in *Spain*, had a Prisoner amongst the rest, a noble Lady, and a Virgin, of a rare Beauty, brought to him, which ravish'd the Eyes of all that beheld her: he caus'd her to be very well guarded, and to be delivered to her Spouse named *Luceius*; and besides, he gave the Gold that her Parents brought to him for her Ransom, to her Beloved, as an Addition to her Dowry. By which several Expressions of his Bounty, the whole Nation was overcome, and yielded to the Roman Empire.

6. It is also reported of *Alexander* the Great, that he very carefully preserved a Captive, Virgin of a rare Beauty, which had been espoused to a neighbouring Prince, and would not so much as see her, but sent her to her Husband: and by this good Deed he got the Favour and the Hearts of the whole Nation.

7. When the Emperour *Cesar Augustus*, surnamed *Germanicus*, in that War in which he overcame the Enemies, and purchased to himself the Name of *Germanicus*, was in the Borders of them of *Colten*, and built certain Castles, commanded that the Value and Price of the Fruits of those Places which he inclosed within his Fortifications, should be paid to the right Owners: by the Report of his Equity and just dealing he obliged and confirmed all that Country in their Obedience.

## CHAP. XII.

*What is to be done in a Camp if we have not sufficient Confidence in the present Forces.*

## Example 1.

**T** Quintius the Consul, when the *Volsci* were ready to assault his Camp, kept only a Company upon the Guard, and sent the rest of the Army to sleep and take their rest; only the Trumpeters he ordered to ride about the Fortifications, and to sound their Trumpets; by which Appearance and Dissimulation, he detained and kept off the Enemy all night, and the next Morning, when they were weary with watching, he suddenly sallied out and easily overcame them.

2. *Q. Sertorius*, in *Spain*, being too weak for the Enemies Cavalry, which was wont to ride up to the sides of his Camp, caused in the night Holes to be dig'd in the Ground, and drew up his Army before them: At last, when the Troops of Horse returned according to their former Custom, he told his Men that he had found that the Enemies had prepared an Ambush for them; and therefore they should not depart from their Colours, nor forsake their Ranks: which being observ'd according to the Discipline of War, he fell by chance into the true Ambushes; which because he had foretold his Soldiers, they were the more courageous.

3. *Cha-*

3. *Chares*, the *Athenian* General; expected some Recruits, but was afraid that the Enemy, in contempt of his slender Forces, would in the mean while assault his Camp: he therefore sent a great many of the Souldiers that he had with him on the other side of his Camp away in the Night, and commanded them that they should return to him again in the most visible manner to his Enemies, and shew the Appearance of Recruits and fresh Succours. By this appearance of Recruits he kept off the Enemy untill he was really relieved according to his expectation.

4. *Iphicrates* the *Athenian*, having his Camp in plain Fields, and understanding that the *Thracians* intended to invade and plunder his Camp, and that they would come down the Hills by one way that led from the top to the bottom; he privately led his Army, and placed them on both sides of the way through which the *Thracians* were to pass: and when the Enemy came running down to the Camp where many Fires were purposely made by a few to shew the appearance of the Army continuing there, he assaulted them on both sides, and overthrew them.

F 3

CHAP.

## CHAP. XIII.

## Of Escaping.

## Example 1.

When the Gauls were to fight with Attalus, they delivered to certain Guards all their Gold and Silver, and ordered them, that if they were put to Flight they should scatter it in the way, that whilst the Enemy was busie in gathering it up they might more easily escape them.

2. Triphon King of Syria being overcome in Batrel, scattered in all the way where he fled, his Money: by that means he detained the Horsemen of Antiochus that pursued him, and escaped from them.

3. Q. Sertorius, being overcome by Q. Metellus Pius, and forced to a Retreat; and not judging his Flight to be safe; commanded his Souldiers to scatter and depart, and acquainted them with the place where he advis'd and ordered them to meet all again together.

4. Viriatus, General of the Lusitanior Portugals, escaped from the Roman Army, and out of a difficult place, in the same manner as Sertorius by scattering his Army, and gathering it again together.

5. Horatius Cocles, when he was pursued by the Army of Porfenna, ordered his Souldiers to return into the City over the Bridge, and to break it down, that the Enemy might not follow: which while it was in doing, he exposed his Life, as the Defender of his City, to keep off such as pursued after

after him. And when he had heard the noise of the Bridge falling down, he cast himself into the River, and pass'd over it loaden, not with Arms, but with Wounds.

6. When Afranius in Spain, at the City of Ilerda, fled from Caesar who pursued him at the Heels, he pitch'd his Camp; and when Caesar, had done the like, and had sent out a Party of his Men for Forrage, he suddenly gave a Command to his Army to march.

7. When Antonius retreated with his Army, which was followed by the Parthians, because that very Morning when he began to move forward he was sorely vexed with their Arrows, and pursued by them, he delayed the time of his Departure till the fifth Hour, and settled his People in their Fidelity, Resolution, and Courage, which caused the Parthians to withdraw themselves; so that afterwards he could perform his Journey, and march the rest of the day without any Lett or Hinderance.

8. When Philippus was vanquished in Epirus, that the Romans might not press upon him in his Flight, he desired and obtained a Truce to bury the slain; which made the Roman Guards to be the more negligent, and give him an opportunity to escape.

9. When Publ. Claudius was overcome in a Sea-fight by the Carthaginians, because he could not avoid to pass through or hard by the Enemies Army, he caused the remaining part of his Navy, being twenty Ships, to be trimmed and adorned as if they had been victorious. At this sight the Carthaginians fancied that the Romans had gotten the Advantage of them; therefore for fear they suffered them to escape.

10. When the *Carthaginians* were overcome by Sea, they endeavoured to put the *Roman Navy* by, and to Sail from them, they made therefore a shew as if they had run their Ships upon banks of Sand; by this means the Conquerours fearing the same mishap, withdrew, and gave them liberty to fly away.

11. *Comminius* of *Arras*, being overcome by *Julius Caesar*, and endeavouring to escape out of *France* into *Britany*, arrived safe to the Sea side when the Wind was favourable, but at low Ebb, so that his Ships stuck fast in the Sand, nevertheless he commanded the Sails to be spread, which when *Caesar* saw afar off in his pursuit after him, and that the Ships were already under Sail, imagined it was impossible to recover him. By this Policy *Comminius* escaped out of his hands.

---

THE

---



---

THE THIRD BOOK

Of the

Stratagems of WAR

OF

*Sextus Julius Frontinus*  
a ROMAN Consul.

---

*The Introduction.*

IF the former Books are so happy as to answer the Title of their Chapters, and to deserve the Reader's Perusal, I shall now produce the Stratagems of War which have been practised in the Besieging and the Defence of Towns. I shall not insist upon any Preface, but only deliver the Subtilties that have been used in the taking of Cities, and Policies which may serve

F 5 the

10. When the *Carthaginians* were overcome by Sea, they endeavoured to put the *Roman Navy* by, and to Sail from them, they made therefore a shew as if they had run their Ships upon banks of Sand; by this means the Conquerours fearing the same mishap, withdrew, and gave them liberty to fly away.

11. *Comminius* of *Arras*, being overcome by *Julius Caesar*, and endeavouring to escape out of *France* into *Britany*, arrived safe to the Sea side when the Wind was favourable, but at low Ebb, so that his Ships stuck fast in the Sand, nevertheless he commanded the Sails to be spread, which when *Caesar* saw afar off in his pursuit after him, and that the Ships were already under Sail, imagined it was impossible to recover him. By this Policy *Comminius* escaped out of his hands.

---

T H E

---



---

THE THIRD BOOK

Of the

Stratagems of WAR

O F

*Sextus Julius Frontinus*  
a ROMAN Consul.

---

*The Introduction.*

IF the former Books are so happy as to answer the Title of their Chapters, and to deserve the Reader's Perusal, I shall now produce the Stratagems of War which have been practised in the Besieging and the Defence of Towns. I shall not insist upon any Preface, but only deliver the Subtilties that have been used in the taking of Cities, and Policies which may serve the

F 5 the



the Besieged in some stead, setting aside all the Works and Engines which are sufficiently known and found out; so that I see no possibility to deliver any new thing concerning them. But in relation to the taking and defence of Towns we shall treat upon these several Heads.

### The Contents of the Chapters.

**C**hap. 1. *Of a sudden Assault.*

Chap. 2. *Of deceiving such as are besieged.*

Chap. 3. *Of drawing and perswading some to Treachery.*

Chap. 4. *By what means the Enemies may be streightned with want.*

Chap. 5. *By what Art the Besieged may be brought to believe that the Siege will continue long.*

Chap. 6. *Of the destroying the Enemies Garison.*

Chap. 7. *Of the turning aside of Rivers, and the spoiling of Waters.*

Chap. 8. *Of striking a Terror into the Besieged.*

CHAP.

Chap. 9. *Of giving an Assault in more places than is expected.*

Chap. 10. *Of Ambushes to draw out the Besieged.*

Chap. 11. *Of the Pretence to raise a Siege.*

On the contrary, the Contents that relate to the Defence of the Besieged.

Chap. 12. *How to oblige a Party to Vigilancy.*

Chap. 13. *How to send out and receive Messengers.*

Chap. 14. *How to bring in Succours, and supply a Town with Necessaries.*

Chap. 15. *How those things that are wanting may seem to abound.*

Chap. 16. *How to prevent Run-aways and Traitors.*

Chap. 17. *Of sallying out.*

Chap. 18. *Of the Constancy of the Besieged.*

CHAP.

## CHAP. I.

## Of a sudden Assault.

## Example 1.

**T** Quintius the Consul, having overcome in Battel the *Æqui* and the *Volsci*, People of *Italy*, he resolv'd to take the Town of *Antium*: he therefore made a Speech to his Army, and shew'd them how needful and easie it was for them, if they went on without Delay. In that Heat and Courage which he had caus'd by his Speech, he set upon the Town and took it.

2. *M. Cato*, in *Spain*, perceiv'd that he might get into his Hands a certain Town if he did assault the Inhabitants before they were aware; he therefore performed in two days the March of four, through difficult and desert ways and places, and came upon the Enemies before they fear'd him, and overcame them: and when his Men had happily succeeded, and ask'd of him the cause of such an easie Performance, he told them, that then they began to be Conquerours when in two days they performed the March of four.

CHAP.

## CHAP. II.

## Of deceiving such as are besieged.

## Example 1.

**W**hen *Domitius Calvinus* besieged the Town of *Luca*, belonging to the *Ligurians*, which was strengthened not only by the Situation and Fortifications, but also by the Number and Courage of the Defendants, resolv'd to surround the Walls many times with all his Army, and then to retreat as often into his Camp. By this Custom the Townsmen were perswaded that the *Romans* did practise this only to exercise themselves: and when they never fear'd any thing from this constant March, the General turn'd the Walk into a sudden Assault, in which they took the Walls, and oblig'd the Inhabitants to surrender themselves and their Town.

2. *C. Duilius* the Consul likewise by exercising the Souldiers and his Seamen, he brought the *Carthaginians* into that Security, because his former Custom had done them no harm, that suddenly he run upon them with his whole Fleet, and took their Fortifications.

3. *Hannibal* master'd many Towns in *Italy* by sending before some of his own People in the Garb of *Romans*, who had got the *Latin* Tongue by the long continuance of the War.

4. The *Arcades*, besieging a Castle of the *Messinians*, made certain Arms in the resemblance of their Enemies, and at that time that they found that their

their Guards were relieved, they furnished some of their own Party in the Habit of those that were expected, and by this Mistake, being received in as Companions, they got Possession of the Place with the Slaughter of their Enemies.

5. *Cimon*, General of the *Athenians*, having plac'd an Ambuscado for a certain City in *Caria*, set on fire in the Night unexpectedly a Temple of *Diana*, much revered by the Inhabitants, with a Grove adjoyning, which was without the Walls: when therefore the Citizens came out to extinguish the fire, he took the Town, being almost empty of its Inhabitants.

6. When *Alcibiades*, the General of the *Athenians*, besieged the City of the *Agrigentini*, which was very well fortified, he desired to parley with them in their Assembly: he discours'd a long time with them about common things in their Theatre, where, according to the *Grecians* Custom, is the usual place of Deliberation. And while he entertained the multitude under a pretence of consulting with them, the *Athenians*, whom he had provided for that Purpose, took Possession of the City Walls.

7. *Epaminondas*, the *Theban* General in *Arcadia*, when the Women of the Enemies came out of the City on a Festival Day, and wander'd up and down in Companies, joyned to them some of his own Souldiers in the Garb of Women, who being admitted in that Habit within the Gates, towards the Night master'd the Town, and let in their own Men.

8. *Aristippus* the *Lacedaemonian*, on the Festival Day of the *Tegeata*, when a multitude were gone out of the Walls to celebrate the Services of *Minerva*, sent Beasts loaden and filled with Sacks of Straw

Straw instead of Wheat, into the City, with Souldiers to drive them, who were under the Appearance of Merchants admitted, and they opened the Gates undiscover'd to their own Men.

9. *Antiochus*, in *Cappadocia*, took a Beast, which was come out of a Castle called *Suenda*, to fetch Wheat; and having kill'd the Drivers, he sent with it his own Men in the Garb of those Drivers, as if they had returned with the expected Grain. The Guards being cozen'd with this Deceit, suffer'd them to enter, and they made way for the Souldiers of *Antiochus*.

10. When the *Thebans* could by no means get into their Possession the Haven of the *Sicyonii*, they built a very great Ship, and fill'd it with armed Men, covering them with some Warres, that it might appear a Vessel for Trade; and at the same time caused a small number of Men to appear at a very great distance from the Walls, with whom, some few without Arms were to meet coming out of the Ship, and to pretend and make a shew of quarrelling: which when the *Sicyonii* saw, they went out to cause the Dispute to cease: in the mean while the Ships of the *Thebans* enter'd into the empty Haven and City, and took them.

11. *Thymarchus* the *Aetolian*, having slain *Charmades*, the Admiral of King *Ptolomy*, took on him his Cloak and Head-piece, after the *Macedonian* manner; and by this Deceit he was received into the Haven of the *Samnii*, and master'd it.

## CHAP. III.

## How to intice and win Traitors.

## Example 1.

**P** *Apyrius*, surnamed *Cursor*, at *Tarentum*, promised to *Milo*, who defended the City with a Party of *Epirots*, that he would save him and his Country-men, if by his means he might win the City: which Reward so prevail'd upon him, that he perswaded them of *Tarentum* to send him as an Ambassadour to the Consul, with whom he fully concluded the Agreement; so that at his Return he made the Citizens secure, and delivered the City unguarded into the *Roman* General's Power.

2. *Marcellus*, having won a certain Inhabitant of *Syracuse*, named *Sofistratus*, to betray the City, understood by him, that the Guards, the next day being a Festival, would be careless and negligent, and the rather, because *Epicides* was to give them Plenty of Wine and good Cheer. He took therefore Advantage of this merry Opportunity, and of the Negligence of the Guards, took the Walls, slew the Watch, and open'd to the *Roman* Army the Gates of this City, which had been famous for several noble Victories.

3. When *Tarquinius Superbus* could not oblige the *Gabii* to yield to him, sent to them his Son *Sextus Tarquinius* beaten with Rods: He exclaim'd against the Cruelty of his Father, and perswaded the *Gabii* to make use of his Hatred and Displeasure against the King. They accordingly having cho-

chosen him to be their Leader, betrayed them to his Father.

4. *Cyrus*, King of *Persia*, sent on purpose his Companion and Friend *Zopyrus*, upon whose Fidelity he could assuredly rely, with his Face disfigured and maimed, to the Enemies. He was thought by them to be a fugitive, provok'd against *Cyrus*, because of the Disgrace offered to him; and he did not a little encourage this Persuasion, by adventuring himself much, as often as they went out to fight, and aiming at *Cyrus* with his Darts: at last, when they had made him Governour of *Babylon*, he deliver'd the City into the King's hands.

5. *Philippus*, being shut out of a Town of the *Samii*, won *Apollonius* their Commander, to betray them, and perswaded him to place a Cart full of square Stones at the very Entrance of the Gate. At the making of a certain Sign, *Philip* suddenly came upon the Townsmen, who were busie in shutting of their incomber'd Gate, and over-power'd them.

6. *Hannibal*, when he besieged *Tarentum*, which was kept by *Livius* with a *Roman* Guard, solicited a certain Man of the City, named *Eoneus*, to betray it, and to practise this Subtilty; That he should under pretence of Hunting, go out in the Night, because it was not likely that the Enemy would suffer him in the Day. And when he was thus gone out, some did supply him with wild Boars, which he carried to *Livius*, as if they had been of his own taking. When he had practis'd this often, and therefore was not narrowly observed, on a certain Night *Hannibal* sent in with him Souldiers of his Army in the Garb of Huntsmen; who being loaded with Venison, which they had in their Hands, they were admitted by the Guards, and suddenly they set upon them and slew them: Then the Gate was broke

broke open, and *Hannibal* was let in with his Army, that destroyed all the *Romans*, except such as fled to the Castle.

7. *Lyfimachus*, King of the *Macedonians*, when he besieged the City of *Ephesus*, and that the Citizens had a certain Arch-pyrate, named *Mandrones*, come to their Assistance, who did often go thither with his Ships loaden with Spoils and Prey, persuaded him to be a Traitor, and to take with him the stoutest men of his Army with their Hands bound behind as Captives, to carry them into the City; who when they were enter'd, they took up Arms out of the Castle, and delivered the City to the King.

## CHAP. IV.

*By what means an Enemy may be driven to Necessity.*

### Example 1.

**W**hen *Fab. Maximus* had wasted and spoiled all the Fields of *Campania*, that they might not have any thing left to encourage their Resolution to maintain and defend a Siege, he departed out of the Country in the sowing time, that the rest of their Corn which was left the Inhabitants might employ it in Seed: but at his Return he trod down all that grew up, and by reducing them to Famine, he obliged them to yield.

2. *Antigonus* practised the same Policy against the *Athenians*.

3. After that *Dionysius* had taken many Cities, and was resolved to assault them of *Rhegium* because they had an extraordinary Plenty of Provisions, he pretended a Peace with them, and intreated them to supply his Army with Food; which when they had granted, they emptied for him the Granaries of the City: then did he set upon it when it was in want of Victuals, and took it.

4. The same was done by him, as is reported, when he went against the *Himæri*.

5. When *Alexander* was to take *Leucadia*, full of all manner of Food, he first took the Castles that were about the Borders, and suffer'd all the Inhabitants to retire and depart to *Leucadia*, that the greater number might sooner waste and consume their Victuals.

6. When *Phalaris* of *Agrigentum* had a Design upon certain Places of *Sicily* which were very well fortified, he pretended an Agreement with the Inhabitants, and stored up with them all the Wheat that he said he had; but he gave order at the same time, that the Tiling of the Granaries where the Wheat was put, should be so broken that it might let in the Rain. The Inhabitants trusting to this Provision which they had with them, were careless of their own Stores; so that in the beginning of the Summer he assaulted them, and obliged them by Famine to yield.

## CHAP. V.

*How to persuade that a Siege will continue long.*

## Example 1.

**W**hen *Clearchus* the *Lacedæmonian* had understood that the *Thracians* had carried all things belonging to Food into the Mountains, and that they were also fed with the Hopes that for want of Necessaries he would be forced to depart; at that time that their Ambassadors came to him; he caused one of his Prisoners to be kill'd before them, and to be cut in pieces, with a Pretence that they were to be distributed amongst the Souldiers for their Food. The *Thracians* therefore believing that he would do any thing to continue there who would not scruple to make use of such abominable Food, surrendered themselves.

2. *Tiberius Gracchus*, when the *Lusitani* or *Portugals* declared that they had Food sufficient for ten Years, and therefore were not afraid of a Siege, answered, Then I will take them in the eleventh Year: At this Expression the *Lusitani* were so much afraid, that though they were well provided with Victuals, yet they yielded to him.

3. When *A. Torquatus* besieged a Greek City, and that the Inhabitants boasted that their Youngmen were well skill'd in the use of Bow and Arrows and Darts; answer'd, I will sell them the dearer when I shall overcome them.

## CHAP.

## CHAP. VI.

*How to destroy the Enemies Garisons.*

## Example 1.

**S***cipio*, when *Hannibal* was returned into *Africa*, found that there were many Towns which in reason would be useful to him if taken, defended by strong Garisons of the Enemy: he therefore sent several Parties to block them up; at last he went thither with his Army, as if he had intended to sack the Cities; afterwards he seem'd to be afraid, and departed from them. *Hannibal* imagining that his Fear was real, called together all his Garisons, as if he intended to engage in a Battel. By that means *Scipio* had what he desired; for by the Assistance of *Massinissa*, and his *Numidians*, he took those Cities when their Garisons were gone.

2. *P. Cornelius Scipio*, understanding how difficult it was to take *Delminium*, because it was defended by a Concourse of People from all Parts, assaulted first other Towns, which caused every one to depart and defend his own City: by that means *Delminium* was emptied of Souldiers, and forced to yield to him.

3. *Pyrrhus*, King of *Epirus*, fighting against the *Illyrians*, when he earnestly desired to get the chief City of the Nation into his hands, but not judging it feasible, went to assault the other Towns. By that means he brought it to pass, that the Enemies conceiving that their chief City was sufficiently fortified, went to the relief of the rest. Then did he call together all his Forces, and finding the chief City empty

empty of its former Garrisons, he took it by force.

4. *Cornelius Rufinus*, the Consul, having besieged a little while the City of *Frotona* to no purpose, because a resolute Party of the *Lucani* being enter'd into the Garrison, defended it. He pretended to raise the Siege, and with a great Reward persuaded one of his Prisoners to go to the City, as if he had escaped out of Prison, to persuade them that the *Romans* were gone. The Inhabitants imagining that this was true, sent away their Auxiliary Troops; and when their Garison had left them, before they were aware he easily overcame and took them.

5. *Mago*, General of the *Carthaginians*, having beaten *Cn. Piso*, and forced him to fly for Refuge to a certain Tower, believed that some Forces would come to relieve him: he therefore sent a certain Traitor to meet the Succours that were coming, and to tell them, that *Piso* was already taken: by this means he discouraged them, and compleated the Victory.

6. *Alcibiades*, in *Sicilia*, desiring to take the City of *Syracuse*, sent out of *Catania*, where he was with his Army, to *Syracuse*, a certain cunning Fellow; who being brought into their Assembly, persuaded them that the Inhabitants of *Catania* were grievously offended with the *Athenians*; So that if they could be assisted by them of *Syracuse*, they would quickly over-power the *Athenians* with their General. With this Persuasion they of *Syracuse* marched with all their Forces towards *Catania*, and left their City, which *Alcibiades* assaulted another way, and finding it empty as he expected, he soon master'd it.

*Cleonymus* the *Athenian*, assaulting the *Troæzenii*, who held a Town with a Garrison commanded by  
Cra-

*Cratenus*, sent into the Walls some Arrows, upon which it was written, That he was come to deliver their Commonwealth, and at the same time shew'd himself kind to his Prisoners, whom he sent into the City to speak ill of *Craterus*. By this Policy he caused them to fall out amongst themselves; so that with his Army he overcame them, and took the City.

## CHAP. VII.

### *Of turning aside of Rivers, and the Spoiling of Waters.*

#### Example 1.

**P** *Servilius*, having turned away a River which supplied the Enemy with Water, forced the Town of *Isaura* to yield for Thirst.

2. *C. Cesar*, amongst the *Gauls*, reduced the City of the *Gadurci* to the want of Water, though it was encompassed about with a River and had many fresh Springs in it; for he dried up the Fountains by mining, and drove them away from the River by his Archers.

3. *L. Metellus*, in the higher *Spain*, turn'd down a River from the higher Ground upon the Enemies Camp which was seated in the lower: and when they were disturbed with the sudden overflowing of the Water, he cut them in pieces with Parties which he had appointed for that purpose.

4. *Alexander*, at *Babylon*, which was divided into two parts by the River *Euphrates*, dig'd a Ditch, and rais'd a Bank, that the Enemies might imagine that they were made for his own use; but suddenly he turn'd the River out of his Course, and through the old Channel, which then being dried up, yielded an Entrance, he march'd into the City.

5. *Semiramis* is said to have practis'd the same thing, by turning aside the River *Euphrates* at the same place.

6. *Clifthenes*, the *Sycionian*, broke an Aquaduct or Conduit, which conveyed Water into the Town of *Crisa*; and when the Inhabitants were vexed with Thirst, he caus'd the Water to run again in the same Conduit, but poison'd it with Hellebore, or the Juyce of Bears-foot; of which they who made use, fell into a Flux and Madnes: so that by that means he took them and their Town.

## CHAP. VIII.

### *How to terrifie the Besieged.*

#### Example 1.

**W**hen *Philippus* could by no means take the Castle of *Trinassus*, he caus'd the Earth to be cast up before the Walls, and made as if he had been undermining. They that were within, thinking that the Castle would be pull'd down upon their Heads, yielded it up to him.

2. *Pelopidas* the *Theban*, resolving to besiege two Towns of the *Magnetes*, which were not far distant from one another, at the same time that he approach'd with his Army to the Walls of one of the Towns, he commanded out of another Camp four Horsemen, purposely to ride with Garlands upon their Heads, with a notable chearfulness, as if they came to give notice of the Victory. And to colour the matter the better, he appointed that a Wood which was between both Towns should be set on fire, and shew the resemblance of a burning City. And besides, he ordered certain Captains to be brought in the Garb of the Country. All these appearances so terrified the besieged, that judging themselves partly overcome by the loss of the other Town, they yielded themselves.

3. When *Cyrus* King of *Persia* had shut up *Cresus* within the Walls of *Sardis*, on that part of the City where a steep Mountain hindred the entrance into it; he rais'd close by the Walls certain high Masts of Ships, equalling in height the top of the Mount; on these Masts he put the Images of armed men in the *Persian* Habit, and in the Night he brought them close to the Hill. The next morning he assaulted the Town on the other side; as soon as the Sun was up, those Images shined as if they had been armed *Persians*, which made the Townsmen imagine that the City was taken behind them; therefore they fled, and yielded the Victory to *Cyrus's* Army.



## CHAP. IX.

*Of making an assault by that side of a Town which is least expected.*

## Example 1.

**S**cipto, at the City of Carthage, at the ebbing of the Sea, was wont to approach the Walls with his Army, following, as he pretended, the footsteps and leading of the God Neptune; but he broke into the Town through another quarter where he was not expected, when the Waters of the Lake were abated.

2. Fabius Maximus, the Cunctator's Son, sent six hundred Souldiers in the dark of the Night, at the City Arpus, held by a Garrison of Hannibal's, when he had consider'd the situation of the Town, to that part of it which was best fortified, and therefore least guarded, that they might climb up to the Walls, and break open the Gates. They being favour'd by the noise of the falling Water, which made the Garrison insensible of their approach, performed their Orders; whilst he at the same time, at the giving of a sign, assaulted the Town by another side, and took it.

3. C. Marius, in the Wars against Jugurtha, near the River Mulucha, besieged a Castle seated upon a rocky Mountain; unto which there was but one only Path, and that very narrow, that led to it; all other sides being as it were on purpose made steep. It happened that a certain common Souldier, a Ligurian,

gurian, of the Auxiliary Troops, who by chance going out to fetch Water, fell a gathering of Snails amongst the Rocks of the Hill, climb'd up so high that he got up to the top. At his return he gave an account of his Adventure to Marius, and that the Castle might be taken on that side; he therefore commanded a few Centurions with the nimblest Souldiers, and with them his best Trumpeters, with their naked Heads and Feet, but with their Swords and Bucklers tyed to their Backs, that they might see about them amongst the Rocks and climb up the better; this Party followed the Ligurian with Darts and long Nails in their hands to help them up: when they were got up to the back side of the Castle, which was not guarded, they began to sound their Trumpets, and to make a great noise, as they had been order'd. When Marius heard this, encouraged his Men to press hard upon, and assault the Guards more furiously, who being called away by the weaker sort, because they thought the Castle had been taken behind, he followed them so close that he took the Castle.

4. Lu. Cornelius, the Consul, conquered many Towns of Sardinia, by landing in the Night some of his stoutest Souldiers, and commanding them to lie concealed, and wait the time when he should think convenient to land with his Navy; and when the Enemy should meet him at his Arrival, and be drawn at a distance away by a pretence of flight in pursuit of him, that then they should rise and assault the forsaken Towns.

5. When Pericles, General of the Athenians, attempted upon a Town defended by the unanimous endeavours of the Inhabitants, commanded the Signal to be given, and the Trumpets to sound a Charge with a great noise by Night on that side of the Walls

Walls which was next to the Sea; and the Inhabitants, imagining that he would enter in at that side, left those Gates unfurnished and unguarded, by which he entred and took the City.

6. *Alcibiades*, another *Athenian* General, came suddenly upon the Town of *Cyzicum* by Night, on purpose to assault it; and on the other side of the Walls caused the Horns to be sounded, which made the Inhabitants run to defend only that part of the Walls where they imagin'd that the Assault was given, whereas they were able to defend all. By that means *Alcibiades* enter'd the Town by that side where there was no resistance.

7. *Thrasybulus*, Caprain of the *Milesii*, endeavoured to take the Haven of the *Sicyonii*, by making an Attempt by Land, and drawing the Enemy to that part where they were assaulted. Then he suddenly enter'd the Haven and took it.

8. *Philippus*, in the Siege of a certain Sea-port-Town, joyn'd together two Ships with Boards, far from the sight of the Inhabitants, and built on them Towers; At the same time he assaulted the Town by Land on other Towers, which drew them all out of their Houses to defend themselves; Then did he suddenly approach the Walls with his high Ships, and took them on that side where there was no opposition.

9. When *Pericles* was to take a Castle of the *Peloponnesus*, unto which there were but two Avenues, the one he shut in with a deep Trench, and resolved to make his approaches at the other Avenue; the Garrison thinking themselves very secure on the other side, minded to defend themselves on that only which they saw most likely to be assaulted; Then did *Pericles* sling a Bridge, prepared on

on purpose, over the Trench, and by that side that was neglected he took the Castle.

10. *Antiochus*, in his War against the *Ephesians*, commanded the Ships of *Rhodes* which were come to his assistance, to enter by Night, and assault the Haven with a great noise, which drew all the Townsmen thither in haste. By that means the rest of the Walls were unfurnished, and he made an attempt on the other side and took the City.

## C H A P. X.

### *Of Ambushes to draw out the Besieged.*

#### Example 1.

**C**ato, in the fight of the *Lacerani*, whom he besieged, kept back the rest of his Army, and sent of the *Suessani*, some of his Auxiliary Troops, who were the greatest Cowards, to assault the Walls; the Besieged made a Sally, put them to Flight and furiously pursued them, but in the mean while he took the City with those Troops which he had hid.

2. *L. Scipio*, in *Sardinia*, left the Assault of a certain City in haste, which he had begun, and in his Retreat shewed the appearance of a Flight. When the Townsmen sallied out to pursue them unadvisedly, he took the Town with those Souldiers whom he had hid near at hand.

3. *Hannibal*, when he besieged the City of *Himera*, suffered his own Camp willingly to be taken, and

and commanded the *Carthaginians* to depart, as if the Enemy had prevailed; which Policy deceived the Inhabitants, and caused them for joy to leave their Town, and run to the Enemies Camp; then did *Hannibal* take the Town empty by those whom he had placed for that purpose in Ambush.

4. The same General, to draw out them of *Saguntum*, marched to the Walls with a thin Battalion, and at the first sally of the Besieged, made as if he had fled, but he caused his whole Army to run in between the Enemy and the City, and having closed them in, cut them all in pieces.

5. *Himilco*, the *Carthaginian* General, placed near the Town of *Agrigentum* part of his Army in Ambush, and commanded them that when the Townsmen were come out they should set some moist Wood on fire; afterwards, he with the rest marched to draw out the Enemy into the Fields, but at their first approach he retreated, and seemed to fly away, to draw by degrees the Townsmen far from their Walls; whilst they who lay in Ambush near the City set fire to the Wood. When they of *Agrigentum* that were come out beheld the great Smoke, thought their City had been burning, and when in a great fear they returned to defend it, they met with the Party that lay in Ambush near their Walls, so that before and behind they were shut in, and slain by them that followed them.

6. *Viriatus*, having secretly placed some Souldiers, he sent a small Party to drive away the Cattel of the *Segobrigenses* in *Spain*; and when they came in great numbers to recover them, and put the drivers to Flight, as they pretended, they were brought into an Ambuscado and destroyed.

7. The Cavalry of the *Scordisci*, when *Lucullus* was General of two Parties of *Heraclea*, made as if they

they had been driving of Cattel, and obliged him to sally out; but they immediately fled, and brought *Lucullus* into an Ambush, where he was slain with eight hundred Souldiers.

8. *Chares*, Captain of the *Athenians*, being to assault a Town near the Sea side, left his Fleet behind a certain Cape, and ordered some of the nimblest of his Ships to sail along by the Enemies Guards; which when they saw, they made out of the Harbor with all their Ships that were to defend it, to pursue after them. In the mean while *Chares* enter'd into the Haven with the rest of his Fleet without resistance, and took the City.

9. *Barca*, Captain of the *Carthaginians*, when the *Romans* besieged *Lilybeum* in *Sicily*, by Sea and Land, ordered a part of his Navy to appear at a distance in sight; which caused the *Romans* to sail speedily to them. In the mean while he took the Haven of *Lilybeum* with the rest of his Fleet, which he kept out of sight.

---

## CHAP. XI.

### *Of the pretence of departing away from a Siege.*

#### Example 1.

**P** *Hormion*, the *Athenian* General, when he had spoiled the Fields of them of *Chalcis*, and that their Ambassadors came to him to complain of it, answer'd them mildly; and the same Night that

he was to send them away, pretended that he had received from his Citizens such Letters as required him to return home; so having led the Ambassadors a little way with him, he sent them back; who, when they returned, declared to their Citizens, that all was safe, and that *Phormion* was departed. They, trusting upon his Humanity, and the return of his Army into their own Country, neglected the guarding of their Town: then *Phormion* suddenly march'd back again, and so overpower'd them, that they were not able to make any resistance.

2. *Agésilas*, General of the *Lacedemonians*, besieged the *Phocenses*, and understood that their auxiliary Troops were already weary of the War; he therefore departed from them a while, as if he had minded other Business, and gave them liberty to be gone. Some time after he returned with his Army, and overcame the *Phocenses*, destitute of their Guards.

3. *Alcibiades* laid an Ambuscado for them of *Byzantium*, who kept themselves within their Walls; and pretending to depart, return'd suddenly upon them, and overpower'd them.

4. *Viriatas*, when he had made three days march away from them of *Segobriga*, return'd back in one day, and overcame them, when they were secure and busie about a solemn Sacrifice.

5. *Epaminondas*, perceiving that the *Lacedemonians* were come to the assistance of his Enemies at *Mantineia*, imagin'd that he could take the City of *Lacedemon*, if he did march thither privately. He commanded therefore many Fires to be made in the Night, that he might conceal his departure with an appearance of his continuance there; but being betrayed by a Run-away, and pursued by the *Lacedemonian* Army, he left the Road that led to *Sparta*, and turn'd his

Reso-

Resolution and Power against them of *Mantineia*; for having made as many Fires as before, as if he had continued in that place, he deceiv'd the *Lacedemonians*, and return'd forty miles to the City of *Mantineia*, which he found naked of defence, and took it.

---

## CHAP. XII.

### *How to stir up the Vigilancy of a Party.*

#### Example 1.

**A** *Leibiades*, when his City of *Athens* was besieged by the *Lacedemonians*, fearing the negligence and carelessness of the Guards, told such as stood Sentry, that they should take notice of the Light that he would shew out of the Castle, and when they saw it that they likewise should lift up Lights, and that he that did neglect to perform this, should be punished. Whilst they waited for a Sign from their General, they all marched carefully, and by that means he avoided the danger of the Night that he feared most.

2. *Iphicrates*, the *Athenian* General, commanding in chief the Garrison of *Corinth*, walked the Rounds a little before the coming of the Enemy, and finding a Souldier who was to stand Sentinel asleep, he run him through with his Spear; which deed when some blamed, as favouring of too much Cruelty, he told told them, as I found him so I left him.

3. *Epaminondas*, the *Theban*, is reported to have done the same.

## C H A P. XIII.

*Of sending out and receiving Messengers.*

## Example I.

When the *Romans* were besieged in the Capitol, they sent *Pontius Cominus* to *Camillus*, who was in his Banishment, to desire his assistance; and that he might pass by and escape from the Guards of the *Gauls*, was let down the Rocks of *Tarpeia*; he swimm'd over the River *Tiber*, and came safe to the City *Vejos*, and having deliver'd his Message, he returned by the same way to the Besieged.

2. When they of *Campania* were besieged by the *Romans*, who watched and guarded all the Passages, they sent one, whom they persuaded to run away to the *Romans*, and hid a Letter under his Belt; which, when he found an opportunity, he carried to the *Carthaginian* Army.

3. Some have sown Letters in the Bodies of Beasts taken in hunting, and other Creatures, which Letters were written in Parchment or thin Skins.

4. Some have driven Beasts on the contrary side, whilst they have been passing the Enemies Guards.

5. Others have written their Letters in the inside of a Sheath.

6. L.

6. L. *Lucullus*, when the *Cyziceni* were besieged by *Mithridates*, that he might make his arrival known to them, tho the Enemies kept the entrances of the City with strong Guards; He commanded one of his Souldiers, a little skill'd in swimming, and in the Art of Navigation, to lean upon two Skins or Bladders filled with Wind, which had Letters stitched in the inside; having in the lower part two strait Sticks fasten'd to them to keep the Bladders at a distance: and in this manner to go over a Streight of seven miles, at that place where but one narrow and small Bridge joyned an Island to the main Land. Which was so dexterously perform'd by this common Souldier, who steer'd his course with his Legs hanging in the Water, that such as saw him at a distance, and that were upon the Guard, thought him to be a Sea-Monster.

7. *Hircius* the Consul sent often Letters to *Decius Brutus*, who was besieged by *Antonius* at *Mutina*, written in Lead, and fasten'd to the Arms of Souldiers who swam over the River *Scultenna*.

8. The same *Hircius* made use of Pidgeons to convey Letters. He shut them up in the dark, and suffer'd them to be very hungry; then did he fasten Letters to their Necks, bound them with a big Hair, and from the nearest place to the Walls of the City he let them fly. They being desirous of Light and Food, mounted on high, to go to the loftiest Houses, where *Brutus* took them; and by that means he was made acquainted with all Passages; for after that he put Food for the Birds in certain places, and so made the Pidgeons to fly thither.

C H A P.

## CHAP. XIV.

*How to put in Succours into a besieged Place, and supply it with necessary Food.*

## Example 1.

**I**N the Civil War, when *Ategua*, a City in *Spain*, that held for *Pompey*, was besieged, *Maurus*, or *Martius*, the Viceroy, made as if he had bin a Trumpeter of one of *Cesar's* Collonels, appointed to visit the Guards; some he rous'd up with his Trumpet, others he shun'd, and courageously went through the middle of *Cesar's* Army, and led into the Town a Garison of *Pompey*.

2. When *Hannibal* besieged *Casilinum*, a City of *Oumpania* in *Italy*; the *Romans* sent down the stream of the River *Vulturnus* Hogs-Heads full of Meal to relieve the besieged; which when *Hannibal* did stop with a long Chain over the River, they scatter'd and flung Nuts into the Water, which the Current carried to the Town; and by that means they supplied the wants of their Fellows.

3. *Hirtius* the Consul; when they of *Mutina* were besieged by *Antonius*, sent to them some Salt; which they wanted, down the River *Saniturnus*, put up in Pipes.

4. The same Consul sent down the Stream some Cattel, which relieved the besieged.

CHAP.

## CHAP. XV.

*How to make such things as are most wanting, seem to the Enemy to abound.*

## Example 1.

**T**HE *Romans*, when they were besieged in the Capitol by the *Gauls*, and were in the greatest want of Bread, were wont to fling some to the Enemy. By that means they made them believe that they had plenty of Provisions, so that they patiently endur'd the Siege till *Camillus* was come to relieve them.

2. The *Athenians*, besieged by the *Lacedemonians*, are said to have done the like.

3. They who were besieged at *Casilinum* by *Hannibal*, were thought to have bin reduc'd to a great Famine, because that between his Camp and the City he had spoil'd all the Herbs that could serve for Food, by plowing up the Ground; but they flung Seed into the Earth prepar'd and turn'd up. By that means they seem'd to have enough to keep them alive untill the next Harvest.

4. They who remained alive after the Defeat of *Varras* and his Army, because the Enemy believed that they wanted Bread, caused the Prisoners to be led round about their Granary all Night; then having cut off their Hands, they sent them away; who when they came to their own Men that besieged the *Romans*, they assured them that there was no hopes of

of a speedy Surrender by the furnishing of the *Romans*, because they had such a great quantity of Food yet remaining.

5. The *Thracians*, besieged in a steep and high Mountain, unto which the Enemies could not ascend, gathered from every Man a small quantity of Corn and Cheese, with which they fed their Cattel, which they drove and sent down to the Enemies Guards; when they had killed them, and found some signs of Wheat in their Guts, they imagin'd that they had yet a great quantity of Corn remaining seeing that they fed their Cattel with it: They departed therefore from the Siege.

6. *Thrasylulus*, Captain of the *Milesii*, when his Souldiers were wearied with a long Siege by *Alattes*, who expected that they would be forced to a Surrender by Famine, when the Ambassadors of *Alattes* were coming, he caused all the Corn of the City to be brought into the Market, and about that time appointed Feasting to be in several places of the City, and the Tables to be covered with Meats; by that means he persuaded the Enemy that he had yet plenty of Food to help them to bear a longer Siege.

## CHAP.

## C H A P. XVI.

*By what means one may prevent Traitors and Run-aways.*

## Example 1.

**L** *Marcellus*, understanding the Design of *Battens* of *Nola*, who endeavoured to persuade his Country-men to fall away to *Hannibal*, whom he favoured, because by him he had been cured of his Wounds received at the Battel of *Canne*, and had been sent home from his Captivity; and because he was afraid by his Punishment to stir up them of *Nola* to Revenge, and dared not to kill him, he sent for him, and told him, that he was a most stout Souldier, which he understood not before, and that he desired that he would continue and abide with him: To his Words he added an Honour, for he bestowed upon him an Horse. By this gracious proceeding he obliged not only him to be true to him but also his Country-men, who were governed by him.

2. *Hamilcar*, General of the *Carthaginians*, when several of their *Gallie* Auxiliaries did often run away to the *Romans*, and that they were wont to be received as their Friends, he persuaded some that were most faithful to him to pretend also to fly to them, who killed some that were sent out to receive and rescue a Party of the *Roman* Army; which Policy did not only help *Hamilcar*, and caused him to succeed in his present Design, but for the future it made all true Run-aways to be suspected by the *Romans* as false.

3. *Hanno*, General of the *Carthaginians* in *Sicily*, understanding that four thousand of the *Mercenary Gauls* had agreed to run away to the *Romans*, because they wanted the Pay of some few Months, and because he was afraid to punish them for fear of a Sedition, he promised that he would reward liberally the injury of a Delay: Therefore the *Gauls* having returned him thanks, he delayed the performance of his Promise for a while till he could send a most faithful Servant to *Otacilius* the Consul, to run away to him for other Reasons, who told him, that the next Night four thousand *Gauls*, who were to be sent out to Plunder, might easily be surprised; *Otacilius* did not give credit suddenly to the Run-away, neither did he think this News was to be neglected; he therefore placed a choice Company of his Men in Ambush: By them the *Gauls* being received, accomplished *Hanno's* two Designs, in destroying the *Romans* and themselves, for they were all cut off.

4. *Hannibal* was revenged of the Deserters of his Army in the same manner, for, knowing that some of his Men would run away the next Night, and that he had in his Camp Intelligencers and Spies of the Enemy; He declared publicly that the Souldiers which were sent by him to understand the Designs of the Enemy, ought to be named most cunning Souldiers; what the Spies had heard from him, they delivered to their own Party, which caused the *Romans* to take the Run-aways, to cut off their Hands, and send them back to *Hannibal's* Army.

5. *Diodorus*, commanding the Garrison of *Amphipolis* with a Party, had a jealousy of two thousand *Thracians* who had a mind to Plunder the City, he pretended therefore that some few of the Enemies Ships were come near a neighbouring Shore, and that

that it was possible to take them; the hopes of this Advantage so encouraged the *Thracians*, that they march'd out of the City; then did he cause the Gates to be shut, and would entertain them no longer.

## C H A P XVII.

*Of Sallies.*

## Example 1.

THE *Romans*, who were in Garrison at *Palermo*, when *Hasdrubal* came to besiege that City, caused on purpose very few to appear on the Walls to defend them, the smallness of their number was so contemn'd by the Enemy, that *Hasdrubal* assaulted the Walls, where he was slain in a Sally.

2. *Æmilius Paulus*, when all the *Ligurians* made an attempt unexpectedly upon his Camp, he seem'd for fear to keep in his Souldiers till the Enemy had sufficiently wearied themselves; then did he sally out of his four Gates, and overthrew and took them Prisoners.

3. When *Velius*, a Roman Captain, commanded the Castle of *Tarentum*, he sent Messengers to *Hasdrubal*, that he would suffer him to depart in safety: By this Pretence he made the Enemy so secure, that when he sallied out he defeated them.

4. *Cn. Pompeius* did not only deliver his Men besieged in the City of *Dyrrachium*, but after a Sally which he made in a very convenient Time and Place, he sur-



surrounded *Cæsar*, who furiously broke out of a Castle which was furnished with a double Fortification, and encompassed him in round, so that between the besieged and *Pompey's* Army that was without, he was in the middle in no small danger, and received a considerable loss of Men.

5. *Flavius Fimbria*, fighting in *Asia* against the Son of *Mirbridates*, near the Town of *Rhyndacus*, drew a Trench half way on both sides of his Camp, and a Ditch before, keeping his Souldiers quiet on the Rampires until the Enemies Horse were enter'd into the streightest place of his Works; then did he sally out and cut off six thousand of them.

6. *C. Cæsar*, amongst the *Gauls*, when the Forces under *Titurius Sabinus* and *Cotta* his Lieutenants, were defeated by *Ambiorix*, and that *Q. Cicero*, who was likewise besieged, sent him this sad News, made haste to him with two Legions, but when the Enemy turn'd to meet him, he seem'd to be afraid, and kept his Souldiers within his Camp which he had purposely made streighter than ordinary; the *Gauls*, as if they had been certain of the Victory, and were come to plunder the *Roman* Camp, began to fill up the Trenches, and to pull down the Palisadoes, then did *Cæsar* send out his Forces on a sudden, and cut the *Gallic* Souldiers in pieces,

7. *Titurius Sabinus*, when a vast Army of the *Gauls* came against him, kept in his Souldiers within his Fortifications, and made them believe that he was afraid. And that he might strengthen that belief, he sent out a Run-away to tell them, that the *Roman* Army was in despair, and resolved to fly. The Enemy being encouraged with the hopes of Victory, loaded themselves with Faggots and Bones to fill up the Trenches, and with full speed ran up to the *Romans* Camp, which was situate on a Hill; from whence

whence, when *Titurius* had sent out his whole Army, he overthrew the *Gauls*, and took many of them Prisoners.

8. The Inhabitants of *Asculum*, when *Pompey* came to besiege the Town, caused a few old and sick Folk to shew themselves from the Walls, which made the *Roman* Army to be more secure and careless; so that when the Towns-men sallied out, they put them to flight.

9. They of *Numantia*, when they were besieged, drew up none of their Forces before the Walls, but kept themselves within, so close and quiet, that *Popilius Lenas* had the Confidence to scale the Walls. And then suspecting a Design, and an Ambush, (for at that instant he met with no resistance) he sound'd a retreat. Then did the Inhabitants sally out, and assailed the *Romans* as they were coming down, and drawing back.

## CHAP. XVIII.

### *Of the Constancy of the besieged.*

#### Example 1.

THE *Romans*, when *Hannibal's* Camp was before their Walls, to express their Confidence, sent out by another Gate a supply and a recruit to their Army, which was then in *Spain*.

2. The

2. The same *Romans*, when the Proprietor of the Field where *Hannibal* had pitch'd his Camp was by chance dead, sold it at a higher rate than it was bought by him before the Wars.

3. The same *Romans*, being besieged by *Hannibal*, at the same time that their Army besieged *Capua*, resolved and decreed, that their Army should not come away from thence untill they had taken that City.

---

THE

---



---

THE FOURTH BOOK

Of the

Stratagems of WAR

OF

*Sextus Julius Frontinus*

once a ROMAN Consul.

---

*The Introduction.*

IN the three former Books, according to my promise, as I suppose, I have placed in order, not without a great deal of Care and Diligence, the Stratagems of War, which I have gathered from the perusal of many Histories. In this Book I shall now set down those things which could not fitly nor properly be placed under the former Heads, and which may be rather called the Examples

ples of Generals and Captains of War, than of Stratagems of War; which I have therefore separated, because, though they be sufficiently known, they are of another kind. And I have here mentioned them, lest any should meet with them by chance in reading, and by the resemblance they have with the former Practices, should unadvisedly think them to be omitted. Truly we must express them as belonging to the former things, and, as before, I shall endeavour to place them under several Heads in the same order.

### The Contents of the Chapters.

- C**Hap. 1. *Of the Discipline of War.*  
 Chap. 2. *Of the Consequence of such Discipline.*  
 Chap. 3. *Of Continency.*  
 Chap. 4. *Of Justice.*  
 Chap. 5. *Of Constancy.*  
 Chap. 6. *Of Affection and Moderation.*  
 Chap. 7. *Of various Counsels, Resolutions, and Advices.*

### CHAP.

### CHAP. I.

#### *Of the Discipline of War.*

##### Example 1.

**P** Scipio reformed the Roman Army, spoiled by the Slothfulness of their former Generals, by sending away a vast number of their Servants and Slaves, and obliging the Souldiers to perform their daily Exercises and Offices. He commanded them likewise to march very often, and to carry the Food of many days with them; so that by that means the Souldiers were used to endure the Cold and Rain, and to pass on foot through the Fords of Rivers. And the General did blame and exclaim against Timorousness and Sloth, breaking all their useless Vessels that were cumbersome in their Expeditions; which happen'd very remarkably to C. Mervius the Tribune, unto whom Scipio is reported to have said, *Thou wilt be an ill man to me for a little while, but to thy self and the Common-wealth always.*

2. Q. Metellus, in the War against Jugurtha, restored again the Discipline of War, which was likewise decayed, by imitating the same Severity, and forbidding the use of any other Flesh to the Souldiers, but what was by himself ordered to be roasted and boiled.

3. Pyrrhus used to say to such as he sent to gather Souldiers, *Chuse me the ablest Bodies, and I will make them stout and courageous.*

4. When L. Flaccus and C. Varro were Consuls, Livius names them L. Æmilius Paulus, and Terentius

*Titus Varro*; then were Souldiers first made by taking an Oath, for before the custom was for a Tribune or a Colonel to ask of them whether they would devote themselves for the Service of their Country: Then did they agree together, and promise with a Curse that they would never depart to save themselves by flight or for fear; and that they would never go out of their Ranks but to take their Weapons to strike an Enemy or to save a Citizen.

5. When *Scipio Africanus* saw a Buckler of a certain Souldier adorned more beautiful than the rest, he told him that he did not wonder at his care and diligence in beautifying it because he depended more upon it for his safety than upon his Sword.

6. When *Philip* first made up his Army, he forbade them all the use of Waggon, and would not suffer a Horsemen to have more than one Servant, and to ten foot Souldiers he appointed likewise a Servant, who was to carry for them when they went out into the Field their Meat and their Ropes, commanding them to bear upon their Backs the Meale needful for thirty days.

7. *C. Marius*, to shorten the Baggage and Carts of the Army which did most incumber it, fitted up the Souldiers Food and Vessels needful in bundels, hanging them behind their Backs upon crooked Staves, which was easie for them to carry, and lean upon: from hence is derived the Proverb, *Muli Mariani*, *Marius's Mules*.

8. When *Theagenes* the *Athenian* led an Army against *Megara*, he answered to those that asked for their Ranks and Places, that he would appoint them one there. He sent afterwards his Horsemen before secretly, commanding them as Enemies to assault their own Friends; by this means he approved those Souldiers that he had to meet and encounter with the

the Enemy. And he suffered them to rank themselves as they pleased, so that whereas the most timorous did fall back in the Rear, and the stoutest were found in the Front. As he found every man standing in that manner, he advanced them to the Military Orders and Places.

9. *Lysander* the *Lacedemonian* reproving a certain Soldier gone out of his way, had this answer from him, that he had not left his Company to steal; but he replied, I will not have thee give the least suspicion of Stealth.

10. When *Antigonus* heard that his Son was gone into a man's House, who had Three Beautiful Daughters; I hear, said he, my Son, that thou hast but a narrow Lodging where so many Dames do command the House. Take, I advise thee, a larger Dwelling; and he ordered him to depart out; withall made a Law, that none should, under Fifty years of Age in the Army, lodge in a dwelling House.

11. *Q. Metellus* the Consul, though he was not hindred by any Law from receiving his Son always in his Tent, yet he appointed him to fight, and to live as the other Soldiers, and to endure the same hardship.

12. *P. Rutilius* the Consul, though the Laws suffered him to have his Son with him in his Tent, yet he made him a Soldier in one of his Legions.

13. *T. Scaurus* forbade his Son to come into his presence, because he had given back, and yielded Ground to the Enemy in a Wood near *Trent*. The young Man oppressed therefore with Grief and Shame kill'd himself. The Romans and other Nations anciently were used to pitch their Camps every where according to their

*ius Varro*; then were Souldiers first made by taking an Oath, for before the custom was for a Tribune or a Colonel to ask of them whether they would devote themselves for the Service of their Country: Then did they agree together, and promise with a Curse that they would never depart to save themselves by flight or for fear; and that they would never go out of their Ranks but to take their Weapons to strike an Enemy or to save a Citizen.

5. When *Scipio Africanus* saw a Buckler of a certain Souldier adorned more beautiful than the rest, he told him that he did not wonder at his care and diligence in beautifying it because he depended more upon it for his safety than upon his Sword.

6. When *Philip* first made up his Army, he forbade them all the use of Waggon, and would not suffer a Horsemen to have more than one Servant, and to ten foot Souldiers he appointed likewise a Servant, who was to carry for them when they went out into the Field their Meat and their Ropes, commanding them to bear upon their Backs the Meal needful for thirty days.

7. *C. Marius*, to shorten the Baggage and Carts of the Army which did most incumber it, fitted up the Souldiers Food and Vessels needful in bundels, hanging them behind their Backs upon crooked Staves, which was easie for them to carry and lean upon: from hence is deriyed the Proverb, *Muli Mariani*, *Marius's Mules*.

8. When *Theagenes* the *Athenian* led an Army against *Megara*, he answered to those that asked for their Ranks and Places, that he would appoint them one there. He sent afterwards his Horsemen before secretly, commanding them as Enemies to assault their own Friends; by this means he approved those Souldiers that he had to meet and encounter with the

the Enemy. And he suffered them to rank themselves as they pleased, so that whereas the most timorous did fall back in the Rear, and the stoutest were found in the Front. As he found every man standing in that manner, he advanced them to the Military Orders and Places.

9. *Lysander* the *Lacedemonian* reproving a certain Soldier gone out of his way, had this answer from him, that he had not left his Company to steal; but he replied, I will not have thee give the least suspicion of Stealth.

10. When *Antigonus* heard that his Son was gone into a man's House, who had Three Beautiful Daughters; I hear, said he, my Son, that thou hast but a narrow Lodging where so many Dames do command the House. Take, I advise thee, a larger Dwelling; and he ordered him to depart out; withall made a Law, that none should, under Fifty years of Age in the Army, lodge in a dwelling House.

11. *Q. Metellus* the Consul, though he was not hindred by any Law from receiving his Son always in his Tent, yet he appointed him to fight, and to live as the other Soldiers, and to endure the same hardship.

12. *P. Rutilius* the Consul, though the Laws suffered him to have his Son with him in his Tent, yet he made him a Soldier in one of his Legions.

13. *T. Scaurus* forbade his Son to come into his presence, because he had given back, and yielded Ground to the Enemy in a Wood near *Trent*. The young Man oppressed therefore with Grief and Shame kill'd himself. The Romans and other Nations anciently were used to pitch their Camps every where according to their

Companies, as so many distinct Villages, for none but Towns had Walls and Fortifications. But *Pirrhus* King of *Epirus* was the first that intrenched in an Army. Afterwards the *Romans* having beaten him in the Fields of *Arusina* near the City *Beneventum*, and taken his Camp, they observed the manner of his pitching, and by degrees are now arrived to that perfection of Encamping which is now in use.

14. *P. Nasica* being in his winter Quarters, tho he had no need of a Fleet, lest the Soldiers should be spoiled by lazyness, or for want of Employment be tempted to do mischief to their Friends, resolved to build Ships.

15. *M. Cato* hath left upon Record, that some of his fellow-Soldiers were condemned to lose their Hands for being taken stealing; and when a milder Punishment was imposed, they were let blood before the Generals Tent.

16. *Clearthus* the *Lacedemonian* General, was wont to say to his Army, That a Commander ought to be more fear'd than an Enemy. He meant by those who were afraid to dye in the Battle; but if they run away, a certain Punishment and Execution was to be their reward.

17. The Judgment of *Appius Claudius* was, that those who had been taken by King *Pirrhus*, and were sent home to the Senate, That the Horsemen should be reduced to fight on Foot, the Footmen should be degraded, and that all should abide out of their Trenches untill each of them should kill, and produce the Spoils of two men of their Enemies.

18. *Otacilius Crassus* the Consul, commanded those who had been forced to pass under the yoke, in sign of submission, to continue out of the

the Camp and Works, that they having no defence, might be used to the Dangers, and be the bolder to encounter with the Enemy.

19. *P. Cornelius Nasica* and *Decimus Junius* the Consuls, condemned such to be publicly whipped with Rods, and to be sold as Slaves, as had forsaken the Army.

20. *Domitius Corbulo* in *Armenia*, caused Two Troops of Horse, and Three Companies of Foot who had given back in assaulting of a Castle, to continue, and lodge out of the Trenches, until by their continual Labour and happy encounter they had wiped off their disgrace.

21. *Aurelius Cotta* the Consul, when out of necessity he commanded the Horsemen to labour in the Works, and that some of them refused to obey him, he complained of it to the Censors, and caused them to be punished. And afterwards he obtained of the Senate that they should lose all their pay that was then due to them.

22. The *Tribunes* of the People likewise consulted them in this business, and by a general consent this Discipline was established.

23. *Q. Metellus* surnamed *Macedonicus*, in *Spain* commanded five Companies, who had been beaten back by the Enemy, to make their Wills, and sent them back to recover the place, threatening them, that he would never receive them again till they had got the Victory.

24. *P. Valerius* being Consul, the Senate commanded the Army that had been overcome at *Siris*, to be led to *Firmus*, and there to fortifie a Camp, and abide in Tents all the Winter.

25. The Senate decreed when their Soldiers were shamefully put to flight, that no assistance should be sent to them, till they had beaten and

taken the Enemy. And that those Legions which had refused to fight in the *Punick War*, should be transported over into *Sicily*, and there remain seven years, and live upon barley bread.

26. *L. Piso* condemned *Titius* the Captain of a Company, to stand every day bare-foot before his Tent when the Watch went the Rounds, with his Gown torn about him, and a loose Cassack, and that he should abstain from bathing and feasting, because he had retreated back, and given ground to the Fugitives with whom he encountered.

27. *Sylla*, when the Enemy broke in upon a Company, and the Commanders were upon the Guard, he ordered them to stand before the Generals Tent without Arms and Belts.

28. *Domitius Corbulo* General in *Armenia*, condemned *Æmelius Rufus* Lieutenant-General of the Horse, to have his Garments broken and cut by a Sergeant, and in that shatter'd Habit to stand before the Generals Tent amongst the *Principes*, until they were discharged, because he had given back, and retreated from the Enemy; and because a party of his Horse was but ill furnished with Arms.

29. *Attilius Regubus* going out of *Samnium* into the Country of *Nuceria* with his Army, met with the Enemy that drove him back. He commanded therefore a Party of his Men behind to kill all such as should offer to retreat, and deal with them as with Fugitives.

30. *Cotta*, Consul in *Sicilia*, caused *Valerius Nobilis* a Collonel, descended of the Family *Valeria*, to be punished, by whipping him with Rods.

31. The same *Cotta* condemned *P. Aurelius* his near Kinsman, whom he had left to command in his absence at the Siege of *Lipara*, when he was gone to *Messina* to enquire about the success of the War, to be beaten with Rods, to be listed amongst the Common Soldiers, and to perform all their Duties, because some of the Works belonging to the Camp had been fired by the Enemy, and the Camp it self had been taken in his absence.

32. *Fulvius Flaccus* the Censor, put out of the Senate his own Brother *Fulvius*, because he had, without the consent of the Consul, dismiss and sent away a Legion, over which he was the Collonel.

33. When *M. Cato* was sailing away with his Fleet from the Enemies shoar, where he had remained some few days, having given, and hang'd out before, the Sign of his departure, and that one of his Soldiers being left behind, called out, and made sign to the Ships to be taken in, he turned about with his whole Fleet, took the Soldier and put him to death, and made him an Example to the rest, rather than to leave him to be destroyed by the Enemy for his Negligence.

34. *Appius Claudius* was wont to take the Tenth Man of those who did offer to give ground to an Enemy, by lot, and beat them with Clubs.

35. *Fabius Rollus* the Consul caused the lot to be cast upon two Legions which had retreated from the Enemy, and those upon whom the lot fell, to be beheaded in the presence of the rest of the Soldiers.

36. *Aquilius* took the third man out of the Companies that had suffered their Guards to be faced by the Enemy, and caused them to lose their Heads with an Ax.

37. *M. Antonius*, when a Mount that he had raised had been burnt by the Enemy, decimated two Colonies or Companies of Soldiers that were to defend the Works, and punished likewise a Centurion or Captain of each *Cohors*; he sent away the Lieutenant Collonel with disgrace, and commanded the surviving part of the Legion to feed upon Barly Bread.

38. The Legion which plundered and destroyed the Town of *Rhegium* without the Generals orders was punished in this manner, Four Thousand of them were imprisoned, and there put to death. Beside, the Senate commanded that none of them should be buried or mourned for.

39. *L. Papyrus* Sirnamed *Cursor*, being Dictator, treated *Fabius Rutilius* master of his Horse in this manner, because he had encountred with the Enemy against his command, though with success. He required him to be beaten with Rods, with an intention to strike off his Head with an Ax, neither could he be prevailed upon by the Endeavors and Prayers of his Soldiers to remit the Punishment; and when *Rutilius* fled to *Rome*, he pursued him, neither would he there forgive him, untill *Fabius* with his Father fell upon their Knees to him, and the whole Senate and People spoke for him.

40. *Manlius* who afterwards was Sirnamed the Imperious, cut off his Sons Head with an Ax, after that he had been beaten with Rods in the presence of the whole Army, because he had joyned

joyned in Battle with the Enemy against his Orders, though he came off with Victory.

41. *Manlius* the Son, when the Army for his sake were ready to rise up in Sedition and disorder against his Father, told them that no Man was of that Worth, that for him the Discipline of War ought to be neglected; he therefore obliged them to suffer him to be punished.

42. *Q. Fabius Maximus* cut off the Right-Hands of such as had run away from his Army.

43. *Q. Curio* the Consul, in the *Dardanick* War, when one of his five Legions about *Dirrachyum* rose up in Rebellion, and refused to march against the Enemy, saying, that they would not follow their Foolish General in a dangerous and troublesom Enterprize: He commanded the Four other Legions to march out, and to stand in order, with their Arms ready, as for a Battle. Afterwards he led out the Seditious Legion without Arms and Belts, and in the view of the rest, he forced them to cut Straws, and the next day he obliged the Soldiers likewise with Girdles to dig a Ditch, and could never be prevailed upon by the prayers of the Legion, nor stopt from taking away their Colours, blotting out the name of their Legion, and from distributing the Soldiers, as a supplement, and in Recruits to the other Legions.

44. *Q. Fulvius* and *Appius Claudius* being Consuls, the Soldiers who where left after the Battle of *Cannæ*, and had been banished into *Sicily*, made request to *M. Marcellus*, that they might be led against the Enemy. When he had informed the Senate with their Petition, the Senate answered, that they did not like to leave the Defence of the Commonwealth to them who had



forlaken it. But they appointed *Marcellus* to do as he judged expedient, upon condition that none of them should be freed from Duty, nor be rewarded with Honour or Gifts, nor be brought back into *Italy*, while any of the *Carthaginians* were there.

45. *M. Salinator*, of the order of Consuls, was condemned by the People, because he had not divided the Prey equally amongst his Soldiers.

When *Q. Pecilius* the Consul was kill'd by the *Ligures* in a Battle, the Senate decreed that the Legion where the Consul was when he fell, should be disbanded, deprived of a years pay, and all remembrances of that Legion should be blotted out.

## CHAP. II.

### *Of the good effect of the Discipline of War.*

#### Example 1.

IT is reputed that the Armies of *Brutus* and *Cassius* in the Civil Wars, when they marched together through *Macedonia*, and that *Brutus* came first to a River, over which they were to make a Bridge; nevertheless *Cassius's* Army made more speed in building the Bridge, and in hastning to pass over, and got before the Army of *Brutus*. This was the effect of their Discipline and good Government, which caused the Army commanded by *Cassius* to excel those of *Brutus's* Army, both

both in working, and in the encounter with an Enemy.

2. *C. Marius* having Liberty to chuse his Army, either that which was commanded by *Rutilius*, or the other under *Metellus*, which afterwards was govern'd by himself, desired rather to have that which *Rutilius* kept under Discipline and good order, though the lesser of the Two.

3. When *Domitius Corbulo* had reformed the Discipline of the Roman Army with Two Legions, and a few Auxiliary Troops, he encountered with the *Parthians*.

4. *Alexander* King of *Macedon* assaulted the whole World with 40000 Men, who had been well trained up by King *Philip*, and overcame vast numbers of his Enemies.

5. *Cyrus* in the War against the *Persians* master'd many difficulties with Fourteen Thousand armed Men.

6. *Epaminondas* General of the *Thebans*, with four Thousand Men, among whom were but Four hundred Horsemen, overcame the *Lacedemonian* Army of Four and Twenty thousand Foot, and Sixteen hundred Horse.

7. By fourteen Thousand *Greeks* which were sent to help *Cyrus* against *Artaxerxes*; an hundred thousand *Persians* were overcome in Battle.

8. The same Fourteen Thousand having lost in a Fight their Chief Commander, left the Care of their Conduct homewards to one of their Number, *Xenophon* by name, who was of *Arhens*; and they returned safe through difficult and unknown Regions and Countries.

9. *Xerxes* was slopt by Three hundred *Lacedæmonians* at the Streights of *Thermopylae*. And when he could scarce destroy them with all his Army, he confessed that in this he perceived his own error, that in Truth he had many men at his Command; but stout, and Valiant, and careful to observe the Discipline of War, he had none.

## CHAP. III.

### *Of Continency.*

#### Example 1.

**I**T is reported of *M. Cato*, when he was going General into *Spain*, that he drank of no other Wine but such as was for the Saylor.

2. *Fabricius*, when *Cyreus* the King of *Epyrus*'s Embassadour offered him a great Sum of Gold, refused it, with this saying, That he had rather command such as had Mony, than to have it himself.

3. *Attilius Regulus*, when he was Chief Commander, was so poor, that he maintain'd himself, his Wife and Children with a small Field which was manur'd and manag'd by a Countryman, of whose Death when he had heard, he writ to the Senate to send him a Successor, because his Family would be in want by the Death of his Servant, and that his Presence was needful at home.

4. *Cn.*

4. *Cn. Scipio*, after that he had many successes in *Spain*, fell into a very great Poverty, and so dyed, that he had not Mony sufficient left for the Marriage of his Daughters, wherefore the Senate appointed them Portions out of the Publick Treasury.

5. The *Athenians* dealt in the same generous manner with the Children of *Aristides*, who deceased very poor, after that he had excellently well behaved himself in his Government.

6. *Epaminondas* the *Theban* General was so sparing in the Field, that there was nothing found in the Field amongst his moveables, but a Pot to boyl Meat, and one Spit.

7. *Hannibal* was wont to rise by night, never went to rest before it was dark, at the dawning of the day he used to go to Supper,; and he never had more than two Beds for him and his Domesticks.

8. The same *Hannibal*, when he was at the Wars under *Hafdrubal* the General, for the most part slept upon the bare ground with his Armour about him.

9. It is reported that *Scipio Amilianus* was wont to eat Bread walking in a Journey with his Friends.

10. The same thing is said of *Alexander* the *Macedonian*.

11. And we read of *Massinissa*, that when he was Ninety years old, he would stand and walk before his Tent, and eat Meat.

12. When *M. Curius* had overcome the *Sabins*, and that the Senate, for his good Services appointed for him a Portion of Land, which old Soldiers use to receive, was contented with the share of a common Soldier, and said that he was

was but an ill Citizen, when that would not suffice which was sufficient for others.

13. Remarkable also hath the moderation bin of whole Armies; as that under *M. Scaurus*. For *Scaurus* writes that in fixing his Camp, there was an Apple-Tree loaden with Fruit within his Fortifications, which the next day when the Army removed, was not so much as toucht, and had lost no Apples.

14. When the Emperor *Cesar Domitianus* led his Army in the German War, which *Julius Civilis* stirr'd up, the most wealthy City of *Leige* which revolted to *Civilis*, was afraid, of *Cesar's* coming, the Soldiers would plunder them. But when they saw contrary to their expectation, that nothing had been taken away by violence, and that they had not lost any thing of their Goods, returned to their obedience, and deliver'd to him seventy Thousand armed Men.

15. *L. Mummius*, when he had taken *Corinth* adorned not only all *Italy* with Statues and Pictures, bat also all the Province; but of all the Spoils he converted so little to his own use, that the Senate gave his Daughter a Portion out of the Publick Treasury.

## CHAP. IV.

*Of Justice.*

## Example 1.

WHEN *Camillus* besieged the *Falisci*, in their Town there was a certain School-master that led the Children of some of the *Falisci* out of the Walls, as if he had intended only to walk with them abroad; but under that pretence he deliver'd them to *Camillus*, and for the recovery of the Children the City would submit to him. *Camillus* abhorr'd his perfidiousness, and caused him to have his hands bound behind, and commanded the Children to whip him back into the Town again to their Parents. By this just dealing he obtained the Victory, which he desired not to obtain by fraud; for this Equitable Proceeding made the *Falisci* to yield to him willingly.

2. The Physitian of King *Pyrrhus* went to *Fabricius*, General for the Romans, promising him that he would give his Master Poison, if before-hand he might have the assurance of a considerable Reward. *Fabricius* thinking that he had no need of such a foul Deed to get the Victory, discovered the Plot, and the Author to the King. This caused him to seek and desire earnestly the Roman's Friendship.

## CHAP. V.

*Of Constancy.*

## Example 1.

**C**N. Pompeius when his Soldiers threatned to plunder, and take his Treasure, which was to be carryed in Triumph, and *Servilus* and *Glaucia*, two Romans, advised him to divide it amongst them, to prevent a Tumult; he assured them that he would not ride in Triumph, but rather dye than to yield to the Licentiousness of his Soldiers. Having therefore reprov'd them severely in a Speech, he cast down before them the Bundles of Rods carryed before him, which were crowned with Lawrel, bidding them to begin their Plunder by the spoiling of them. This proceeding made them so ashamed, that they continued in their Obedience.

2. *C. Caesar*, in the Heat of the Civil War, in a Sedition of his Soldiers, when they were therefore the bolder, disbanded a whole Legion, and cut off the Heads of their Leaders with his Axes; but a little after, when they who were disbanded petition'd for a Pardon, he received them again, and they proved to him some of his best Soldiers.

3. *Postumius*, who had been Consul, encouraged his Soldiers to fight, and when they demanded what he would order, he cryed out, That they would imitate him, with that he takes the Colours, and marched strait against the Enemy; they likewise followed, and got the Victory.

4. *L. Marcellus*

4. *L. Marcellus* falling unadvisedly into the hands of the Gauls, rid round about to spy out some way to escape; and when he found that the Enemies had possessed all the Passages, he prayed to the Gods, and broke into the midst of his Enemies, who were affrighted at his unexpected Boldness, and kill'd their Leader; so that when there was scarce any appearance to escape with Life, he overcame the General, and carryed away his Arms.

5. When *L. Paulus* had lost his Army at the Battle of *Cannæ*, *Lentulus* offered him a Horse to fly, but he would not survive his ill Success, which had not been occasioned by him, but continued upon that Rock where he had been wounded, and against which he leaned, untill the Enemy came, overpowr'd and kill'd him.

6. *Varro* his Partner shewed a greater Constancy after that defeat. The Senate and People returned him their Thanks, because he had not despair'd of defending the Commonwealth. He shewed sufficiently that he preserved himself not out of a desire of living, so much as out of a Love for his Country, for he let his Beard and Hair grow out to a length, and never after would rest to take his Meat. And when the People offer'd him Honours, he refused them, saying, That the Commonwealth had need of more successful Magistrates.

7. *Sempronius* surnamed *Tuditanus*, and *C. Octavius*, Tribunes of the Soldiers, when all was lost at the Battle of *Cannæ*, and they were besieged by the Enemy in the lesser Camp, perswaded the Soldiers, with their Swords in their hands, to break through with them, the Enemies Guards, assuring them that this was their Resolution, though

though none should have the Courage besides themselves. There were but Twelve, partly Horsemen, partly Footmen, of all the rest who had the boldness to keep them company, and with these they came safe to *Canusium*, a Roman Garrison.

8. *C. Fontejus Crassus* in Spain, going out to forage with Three Thousand Men, was surrounded in a difficult passage by *Hasdrubal*. He acquainted only the first Ranks of his Soldiers with his Design; and in the beginning of the Night, when he was least expected, he broke through the Enemies Post.

9. *P. Dicitus* the Tribune in the *Samnitick* War, when *Cornelius Cossus* the Consul was caught in a difficult place, advised him to send a small Party to possess a neighbouring hill, and offer'd himself to lead that Party. By this means he drew the Enemy to another place, and opened a way for the Consul to escape; but in that Station they besieged *Derius*, and surrounded him. He in the Night sallyed out of those Streights, and came safe with his Soldiers to the Consul.

10. The same Policy was practiced under the Command of *Attilius Calatinus* the Consul, by him whose Name is variously recorded. Some call him *Laberius*, others *Q. Ceditius*, many *Calpurnius Flamma*. When this Man saw his Army led into such a Valley, where all the Hills round about were possessed by the Enemy, he desired the Consul to give him the heading of Three Hundred Men, which being granted, he exhorted them by their Courage to save their Army; with this Party he ran down into the middle of the Valley, and when the Enemies on all sides came to destroy them, he detained them so long in

in a sharp fight, that the Consul had time to draw, and lead out his Army.

11. *C. Caesar* marching against the *Germans*, and their King *Arivistus* with his Army, perceived that his Soldiers were terrified, he called them together therefore, and told them that he would make use that day of none of his Legions but only of the Tenth Legion. By this saying he encouraged the Soldiers of that Legion to behave themselves most manfully, and the others were moved with shame to fight, that the others might not carry away all the Honour and Glory of the Field.

12. A certain Noble Man of *Lacedemon*, when King *Philip* threatned to punish them with Fines, if they did not deliver up their City, answered, He can never hinder us from dying for our Country.

13. *Leonidas* the *Lacedemonian*, when one told him that the *Persians* with the multitude of their Arrows would make a Cloud, answered, We shall then fight the better in the shade.

14. When *Calius* the City *Praetor* was doing Justice in the Seat of Judicature, a *Magpy* pitch'd upon his Head. And the *Roman* Southsayers told him, that if he did let go the Bird, the Enemies would obtain the Victory over the *Romans*, but if he kill'd the Bird, the *Romans* Armies would have the advantage, but *Calius* with all his Family would perish. He therefore destroyed the Bird, and it happened accordingly, the *Roman* Army got the Victory, but *Calius*, with Fourteen of his Family and Name were killed in that same Fight. Some report that it was not *Calius*, but *Lalius*, and that the Family of the *Laly*, not the *Calys* were destroyed.

15. *P. Decius*, first the Father, next the Son, being Magistrates, offer'd themselves to dye for the Commonwealth: for putting spurs to their Horses, they charged the Enemy, and obtained for their Country the Victory.

16. When *P. Crassus* was engaged in *Asia*, in the War against *Aristonicus*, between *Ælia* and *Myrina*, he fell in amongst the Enemies Forces, and was taken Prisoner, which caused him to exclaim against the *Roman* Consul, because of his Captivity; but with the Rod that he had in his hand to strike his Horse, he put out the Eye of a *Thracian*, who to revenge himself, run him through, and deliver'd him from his Captivity, as he desired.

17. *M. Cato* the Censors Son, falling down in a Battle from his Horse, when he look'd about, and perceived that his Sword was fallen out of the Scabbard, he feared the reproach of his own Men; he therefore returned to the Enemy, and recovering his Sword after he had received some Wounds, he returned back to his own Parry.

18. When the *Petilini* were besieged by the *Carthaginians*, they cast out of their City their Aged Parents and Children, because of the Famine. And they endured a long Siege of eleven Months, by feeding upon the leaves of Trees, upon wet Leather dried at the Fire, and upon all manner of Beasts.

19. The *Spaniards* called *Arabricsenses*, suffered the same Misery, and would not deliver up the Town to *Herculeius*.

20. When the *Cassilini* were besieged by *Hannibal*, they suffered so much want, that a Mouse was sold for a hundred Pence, as it is left upon Record, and that he that sold it dyed for want,  
but

but the Buyer preserved his Life. They continued nevertheless in their Fidelity to the *Romans*.

21. When *Mithridates* besieged *Cyzicum*, he brought forth the Captives of that Town, and shewed them to the Besieged, imagining that out of Pity and Compassion of their own Men, the Towns-People would yield themselves. But they exhorting the Prisoners to suffer Death manfully, kept their Faith to the *Romans*.

22. The *Segobrigenses*, when their Wives and Children were kill'd by *Viriatius*, chose rather to behold the Torments of their Dear Relations than to fall away from the *Romans*.

23. They of *Numantia*, rather than to yield, shut themselves up in their Houses, and were famish'd to Death.

## CHAP. VI.

### *Of Affection and Moderation.*

#### Example 1.

WHEN *Q. Fabius* exhorted his Son that he should chuse a convenient place with the loss of a few Men. He answered, wilt thou be of the number of those few?

2. *Xenophon* being on Horseback, commanded a Party of Foot Soldiers to take the Top of a Hill, but when one of them murmur'd, That he could easily (sitting on his Horse) order such a difficult March. He alighted, and made the Soldier to mount in his stead, and he running on foot,  
got

got up to the Top of the Hill. The Soldier being ashamed of what was done, when all his Fellows laughed at him, alighted. They all together could hardly persuade *Xenophon* to take his Horse again, and to preserve himself for the Offices and Duties belonging to a General.

3. *Alexander* leading his Army in the Winter, when he was sitting by a Fire to take a view of his Forces as they march'd by him, saw a certain Soldier almost dead with Cold; he called him; and made him sit in his place, telling him, That if he had been born among the *Persians*, to sit in the Kings Seat, would be a Crime worthy of Death, but to a *Macedonian* born, it was allowed.

4. *D. Augustus Vespasianus* understanding that a certain young man, of Honest Parentage, unable for the War, because of his great Poverty, was brought down to the lowest ranks of Soldiers, he appointed him a Pension, and freed him from the Militia.

## CHAP. VII.

### *Of various Counsels, Resolutions and Advices.*

#### Example 1.

*Cæsar* used to say that his Policy was to treat an Enemy as many Physicians do the Distempers of Bodies, to overcome them rather by Famine than by Sword.

2. *Domitius*

2. *Domitius Corbulo* was wont to say that an Enemy was to be overcome with a Mattock, that is by Works and Trenches.

3. *L. Paulus* was of a Judgment that a General should be Old in Manners, that is, should follow the most moderate Counsels.

4. It is reported of *Scipio Africanus*, that when one told him that he was no Fighter, answered, My Mother made me a General, but no common Soldier.

5. *C. Marius*, when a *German* challeng'd him out to fight him; told him, That if he were desirous of Death, he might go and hang himself. And when one shewed him a Gladiator of a low Staure, but very old, he bid him fight him, and if he did overcome, he would encounter with him who was the Conqueror,

6. *Q. Sertorius* understanding by experience that he was not able to deal with all the *Roman* Army together in a Body, that he might better be able to teach his *Barbarian* People, who desired earnestly to fight them, he brought before them Two Horses, the one strong and lusty, the other very weak, and commanded two Young Men answerable to them to take them in hand; to the strong man he appointed the weaker Horse, bidding him to pull off the whole Tail; but the weaker Young Man, he commanded to pull off the Tail of the strong Horse one Hair after another. The Weak Person succeeded in his Enterprize, and pulled off all the Tail by degrees; but the strong Young Man strived in vain to pull off the Tail of the weak Horse. By this example, said *Sertorius*, my Soldiers, I have discovered to you the Nature of the *Roman* Army, they are not to be overcome if you encounter them

## 146 *The Stratagems of War.*

them all together ; but you may destroy them by degrees, if you take them by Parties.

7. *Valerius Levinus* the Consul, having taken within his Camp a Spy of the Enemy, out of a confidence he had in his Soldiers, commanded him to be led about the Quarters; and to terrifie the Enemy, he assured him, that when they pleased, their Spies should have liberty to take a View of his Forces.

8. *Calius Principularis*, who was chose Captain in *Germany* over such as remained alive, and were besieged after the Defeat of *Varrus*, fearing lest the Enemy should fire the Heaps of Wood joyning to the Trenches, and by that means set their Camp in a Flame, pretended the want of Wood ; he sent therefore many to steal Wood every where ; which, when the *Germans* saw, they carried away all the Heaps of great Wood.

9. *Cn. Scipio* in the *Maritime War* cast Pitchers full of Tar and Grease into the Enemies Ships, that by their weight they might do mischief, and by breaking and shedding what was therein contained, they might afford an encouragement to the Fire.

10. *Hannibal* shewed to King *Antiochus* how he should cast Pots full of Vipers into their Enemies Ships, which so affrighted the Soldiers, that they were thereby hindred from resisting, and from the Government of their Ships.

11. *Prusias* practiced the same Policy, when his Fleet gave back.

12. When *M. Porcius* in a furious manner broke through the Enemies Fleet, the *Carthaginians* were thereby troubled and out of order, *Porcius* took an advantage of it, causing his Men to take the *Carthaginian Arms*, and hang out their

## *The Stratagems of War.* 147

their Colours ; by that means, under the appearance of Friends, he deceived, and sunk several of their Ships.

13. When the *Athenians* had been assaulted by the *Lacedemonians* in their Festival days, which were kept in Honour of *Minerva*, out of the City, they continued the appearance of such as were wont to honour the Goddess, only under their Coats they had hid their Weapons. When they had performed their accustomed Worship, they returned, not immediately to *Athens*, but from thence in a speedy manner they hasted to *Lacedemon*, at that time when they were least expected, and plundered all their Enemies Country at their pleasure : whereas a little before they had been plunder'd by them.

14. *Cassius* took some Ships of burden, which were scarce useful, and firing them, he sent them before the Wind amongst the Enemies Fleet, and set them all a Fire.

15. *M. Lucius* having defeated *Hasdrubal*, some advised him to pursue the Enemy till they had totally destroyed them ; pray, said he, let some of them remain alive, who may declare our Victory to the Enemy.

16. *Scipio Africanus* was wont to say, That it was good Policy, not only to give the Enemy a way to escape and fly, but also to secure it to them.

17. *Pericles* the *Athenian* promised his Enemies that they should be safe, if they would cast down their Weapons, which when they had done, he commanded all that had in their Armour Iron Bucklers to be slain.

18. When *Hasdrubal* was entred into the Borders of *Numidia* to subdue them, and that the Inhabitants prepared to resist him ; he told them that



that he was come only to hunt Elephants, which, were plentiful in *Numidia*, and if they would suffer him, he promised to do them no harm. They believed him, and called back their Forces, then did they assault and subdue them.

19. *Alcetas* the *Lacedemonian*, that he might more easily surprize a Convey of Victuals sailing to *Thebes* unexpected, provided some Ships in a secret place, shewing but one Galley, in which by turns, he exercised his Marriners. But in a convenient time, when the *Thebans* were sailing by, he sent out all his Ships against them, and took all their Provisions.

20. *Ptolomeus* having but a weak Army when he marched against *Perdicas*, who was the stronger in Forces, took all sorts of Beasts, and caused them to draw behind them Carts, and to be driven forward by a few Horsemen. In the mean while he marched before with what Troops he had with him; so that the dust raised by the Cattle gave an appearance of a vast Army that followed behind; which thought so terrified the Enemy, that they were put to flight.

21. *Myronides* the *Athenian* going against the *Thebans*, who were more numerous in Horse, when his Foot came into the plain Fields, he told them, that if they did keep their ground, they would be safe, but if they yielded, they would be destroyed, by this Speech he confirmed his Soldiers, and got the Victory.

22. *L. Pinarus* being Governour in *Sicily* of the Town *Enna*, when the Magistrates of the City desired him to deliver up the Keys of the Gates, which he had in his Custody, to them; he had a jealousy of them, that they intended to turn to the *Carthaginians*; he desired therefore one  
Nights

Nights space to consider of it, informing secretly his Soldiers of the treachery of those *Greeks*; he commanded them to be ready the next day, and expect the Signal. The next morning, in the Presence of his Soldiers, he told the Magistrates that he would deliver up the Keys, if all the Inhabitants desired it; for that purpose all the Citizens being call'd into the Theater, demanded the delivery of the Keys. By this he understood of their purpose to revolt to the Enemy, he immediately therefore gave order to his Soldiers to fall on, and kill all the Inhabitants.

23. *Iphicrates* the *Athenian* General took the Colours, at the appearance of the Enemies Fleet, and sailed to a Town of which he had a jealousy, and when at his landing he was received with great Expressions of joy, he found out their unconstancy, and plunder'd the Town.

24. *Tiberius Gracchus* declared publicly that he would give liberty to all the Volunteers who behaved themselves manfully, but that he would crucifie the Cowards. When therefore four thousand of those who had been sloathful in the Fight, for fear of the Threatned Punishment, were gathered together on the Top of a Hill; he sent to tell them, that his whole Army of Volunteers, in his judgment had got the Victory, seeing the Enemy was fled. By this saying he deliver'd them from the fear of Punishment, and kept them in their Obedience.

25. *Hannibal*, after the Battle at the Lake of *Thrasginerus*, where the *Romans* received so great a Loss; when he had got into his Power six thousand of his Enemies, by an agreement he sent away all the Confederates of the *Latine*  
I Country.

Country, and spoke graciously to them, saying, that he was come into *Italy* to make War, to free the Country from the *Roman Slavery*; and by their means some of the People surrendered themselves to him.

26. *Magro*, when the *Locri* were besieged by *Crispinus*, Admiral of the *Roman Fleet*, caused a Report to be spread abroad in the *Roman Camp*, that *Hannibal* had kill'd *Marcellus*, and was coming with his Army to raise the Siege of the Town; having therefore secretly sent out a Party of Horse, he order'd them to shew themselves on the top of the Hills which were in sight; when *Crispinus* saw them, he imagined that *Hannibal* was really coming, he therefore hastened with his Army on Shipboard, and fled.

27. *Scipio Æmilianus* at the Battle of *Numantia*, placed his Bow-men and Slingers not only between his Cohortes, but also between every Century or Company of Foot.

28. *Pelopidas Thebanus* being put to flight by the *Thessalians*, and having sounded the depth of a River, over which he had hastily cast a Bridge; that the Enemy might not make use of it also to pass over, he commanded the Rear of his Army to burn the Bridge.

29. When the *Roman Cavalry* could by no means encounter with the Horsemen of *Campania*, *Q. Navius*, a Captain in the Army of *Fulvius Flaccus* the Proconsul, found a way to strengthen them. He caused out of all the Army, some of the nimblest Footmen to be chosen, who were of a middle Stature. He furnished them with round and little Bucklers, with Headpieces, Swords, and seven Spears, every one about four Foot long, placing them amongst the Horse, commanded

manded them to march as far as the Walls of the City. In this order they accompanied the *Roman Horse* when they encountred with the Enemy, and did a great deal of Mischief to them, chiefly to their Horses, that were thereby soon disordered, and obliged to leave the Victory to the *Romans*.

30. *P. Scipio* in *Lydia* seeing the Army of *Antiochus*, that had suffered much by the Rains that fell continually, during a Night and a Day, and that not only his Men fainted, but also some of their Horses became unserviceable; and their Bow-strings being wet, were become useless: He encouraged his Brother the next day to give them Battle, though it was a Religious day, which advice being followed, he obtained the Victory.

31. When *Cato* was plundering of *Spain*, the Embassadors of the *Hergeti*, who were confederates with the *Romans*, came to him, to beseech him to send them Help. He being loath, by denying assistance, to alienate the minds of his Friends, or by dividing his Army, to weaken his Forces, commanded a third part of his Army to provide themselves with Victuals, and to get a Shipboard; but gave them privately orders to return back again, and pretend that the Wind was contrary. The report of Succours that were a coming encouraged the *Hergeti* to defend themselves, and disappointed the designs of their Enemies.

32. *C. Caesar* knowing that *Pompey* had in his Army a great number of *Roman Knights*, who by their skill in Arms would overcome his Soldiers, commanded his men to aim with their Swords at their Faces and Eyes; by this Policy he obliged them

them to turn away their Eyes, and to give back.

33. When the *Vaccei* were fighting against *Sempronius Gracchus*, and sorely handled by his Army, they enclosed themselves round with their Waggon full of their stoutest Men in Womens Apparel, which made *Sempronius* more bold to assault them, thinking them to be but Women; but they charged his men so stoutly, that they put them to flight.

34. *Eumenes Cardianus*, one of the Successors of *Alexander*, being shut up in a Castle so close, that he could not exercise his Horse, caused their Legs to be tyed up every day at certain Hours, that standing upon their Hinder Legs, and their fore Feet lifted up on high; their desire and endeavour to stand on their fore Feet made them yield a Sweat all about their joynts.

35. *M. Cato*, when the Country People promised him Guides to lead him, and convey him, if he would give them a considerable sum of Money; he freely offered it to them; for he hoped when he should obtain the Victory, to pay them with the Plunder of their Enemies: or if it happened that they were killed, he expected then to be free from his promise.

36. *Q. Maximus*, when *Statilius* a Noble Knight of excellent Abilities was resolved to run away to the Enemy, sent for him, and desired to be excused, because, through the envy of his fellow Soldiers, he was not well acquainted with his rare Virtues. He therefore gave him a Horse and Money, and sent him away, who come to him afraid to be punish'd, joyful of his Rewards, and made him doubtless for the future a Faithful, as well as a Stout Soldier.

37. When

37. When King *Philip* understood that a certain good Warriour, named *Pythia* hated him, because having three Daughters to maintain, he was Poor, and could not well provide for them, and the King gave him no assistance: beside, some warned him to take heed of him, he answered, What if I should have some part of my Body diseased, would I not rather heal it, than cut it off? He sent therefore for this *Pythia* secretly, enquired of his Estate and Condition, and furnished him with Money. By this means he obliged him to be both a better and more faithful Friend and Servant than before.

38. *T. Runitius Crispinus*, after the unhappy encounter with *Hannibal*, in which he lost his Partner *Marcellus*, and understanding that the Conqueror had got the Seal of the slain Consul, sent Letters all over *Italy* not to give credit to the Letters that were sealed with the Signet of *Marcellus*. By this seasonable advice he prevented the cunning of *Hannibal*, who endeavour'd in vain to get into his hands the Town of *Salapia*, and other places of *Italy*.

39. After the defeat of *Canne*, the Roman Courages were so abated, that some Authentick Authors have left upon Record, that a great many that remain'd alive put it in deliberation, whether they should forsake *Italy*. Then did *P. Scipio*, a very young man, offer Violence to him who propos'd such a thing in an Assembly, and publicly declar'd that he would kill him with his own hand, unless he did swear that he had a resolution never to forsake the Commonwealth: when this man had first bound himself by an Oath, he drew his Sword, and threatned Death to a near Kinsman, unless he did also take the

I 3.

\*same

## 154 *The Stratagems of War.*

same Oath. He forced him for fear, and all the rest were led by the same example to swear the same thing.

40. When the Camp of the *Volosci* were near to a Wood, and a place full of Briars and Thorns; *Camillus* carryed all that would take fire as far as their Works; and set them in a Flame, and drove them from their Camp.

41. *P. Crassus* in the War of the Confederates, in the same manner was surpris'd and undone with almost all his Forces.

42. When *Q. Metellus* was to remove his Camp in Spain, and that the Soldiers, who were to march, kept themselves still in their Camp, *Hennocrates* hath related, that they were ordered to abide till the next day; and by that short rest, became more fit for the Fight than his People: so that by this means *Metellus* made an end of the War.

43. *Miltiades*, when he had put to flight a vast number of *Persians* at the Battle of *Marathon*, obliged the *Athenians*, who were willing to continue there some time, to rejoice at the Victory, to depart and speedily relieve their City, against which the *Persian* Fleet was sailing. He prevented them, and filled the Walls with Armed men. When the *Persians* came, they imagined the *Athenians* to be very numerous, and that they had yet an Army at *Marathon* as well as at *Athens*, therefore they suddenly turned about, and sailed back into *Asia*.

44. *Pisistratus* the *Athenian*, when he had taken the Fleet of *Megara* (brought by Night *Eleusis*, to catch the *Athenian* Dames, who used to do Honour to the Goddess *Ceres*) and made a great slaughter of the Enemy; took their Ships, and filled

## *The Stratagems of War.* 155

filled them with *Athenian* Soldiers, placing upon the Decks some of the Women in the Garb of Prisoners; with which appearance they of *Megara* being deceived, and imagining that their Men were returned with success, came thronging out of the City to meet and welcome them. Then did *Pisistratus* fall upon them unarmed, and again made a great destruction of them.

45. *Cinion* the *Athenian* General, when he had overcome the *Persian* Fleet at the Isle of *Cyprus*, caused his Men to take the Arms of the *Persians*, and in their Ships to sail into *Pamphilia* towards the Enemy, into the River *Eurymedon*. The *Persians*, who were there, knowing the Ships, and thinking the Men upon the Decks to be their own, never suspected any thing, till they were assaulted, and suddenly overpowered; and the same day they were overcome both by Sea and Land.

---

F I N I S.

A  
COLLECTION  
OF THE  
Brave EXPLOITS  
AND  
Subtil STRATAGEMS  
Of several Famous  
GENERALS  
SINCE THE  
Roman Empire.

With a  
Discourse concerning En-  
gines of WAR.

---

By M. D'A.

---

L O N D O N ,

Printed for S. Heyrick, J. Place, and R. Sare,  
Bookfellers at Grays-Inn-Gate, and Furnivals-  
Inn-Gate in Holborn, 1686.

---

---

TO ALL  
MILITARY SOULS  
OF THE  
*English* NATION.

**T**IS for your Perusal that this  
Treatise is publish'd : To you  
I dedicate these Collections,  
as the most suitable to your Generous  
and Martial Dispositions. No Nati-  
on under the Sun have taken a greater  
Delight in War than ours, and none  
have been more successful in former  
Ages, and purchased more Honour in  
the Field than the English. But this is  
remarkable in History, that their Nota-  
ble Victories were gotten more by their  
a plain

## The Epistle

*plain Valour, than by their Policies. The Strength of other Nations consists in Subtilties and Ambushes; there are are few that dare face an assaulting Enemy in the open Field, and oppose their naked Breasts to the Showrs of the Murthering Shot. Behend a Hedge, a Ditch, or a Breast-work, and when they have the Advantages of Number and the Ground, they may venture a Battel. But the English have been taken notice of for their Undaunted Courage in the midst of the greatest Difficulties, and have often snatcht the Victory out of the Hands of their Insulting Enemy. But if the English Courage alone, without the Assistance of Art, hath been so Victorious, what Wonders would it not be able to perform, if it were seconded by Policy and Craft? I conceive therefore it may not be useless to you, my Brave Countrymen, to have an Abstract, or a Collection in your own Language of the*  
Stra-

## Dedicatory.

*Stratagems which have been practiced in War by the most experienced Commanders; that when you may happen into the same Difficulties and Dangers, you may understand what others have done to wind themselves out, and by what means they have purchased Safety, Honour, and Victory to themselves and Followers. I doubt not but some of you may have as sharp and subtile Wits as good Courages, and that you will be able to use both in the business of War. But I believe none can deny, but a Collection of such Examples as these, both Antient and Modern, will be able to advise, direct, and encourage your Invention to ingenious Contrivances: For that purpose I have Translated Frontinus, who, being a Roman Warriour, and of the Order of the Consuls, Collected the most remarkable Stratagems of the Persians, Greeks, Romans and Carthaginians. Their manner of Fighting.*  
a 2 and

## The Epistle

*and Weapons differ much from ours I confess; nevertheless we may learn from them, and be directed by them in many cases; for we meet with Enemies subject to the same Passions and Infirmities as they, and we may improve the same Accidents and Opportunities which happened to them. But for the compleating of this Treatise, I have added a Collection of the most approved Histories of divers brave Exploits and cunning Stratagems, successfully employed by later Generals for the purchasing of Victory, that you might have here a Prospect of the Warlike Policies of the first and latter Ages together, and that in the perusal of the Noble Actions of our brave Predecessors, you may see the ready, and path-way to Honour.*

*You know not how soon the Interest of the Kings Majesty, and of this Kingdom, may call you, my Valiant Countrymen, into the Field. It is there-*

## Dedicatory.

*therefore your Wisdom now amongst the Delights of Peace, not to forget the difficulties and dangers of War, and to mind a judicious preparation for the latter as well as the Enjoyment of the former. You especially, are in reason to be ready for the Service of your Prince and Country, whose brave Ancestours have by their Valour purchased for you Titles of Honour and Estates together; You, who are to be Examples of Virtue and Courage, and who have the greatest Interest in the Country where you live. This Preparation ought to consist not only in Warlike Provisions, in good Arms, and in the understanding the Duties and Arts of Officers and Soldiers; but if you be, or expect to become Leaders of Men, the Knowledge of the Warlike Stratagems of former Captains, and how to ensnare an Enemy without hazard, will furnish you with an excellent Skill for the Services that may be required from you.* I



## The Epistle, &c.

I shall only desire that you would employ the Arts and Policies which you may learn from this Compendium for the Advancement of the Glory of your God, for the Preservation of the publick Peace, Quiet and Happiness of the Nation, for the Security and Honour of our King, and for the Defence of the Interest of the Royal Family, which God of his Mercy Bless with all increase of Temporal and Spiritual Blessings. This shall always be the Prayer of him, who wishes that your Religious and Loyal Undertakings may ever be Crowned with Victory and Success.

M. D.

---

## *A Collection of the Brave Exploits and Subtil Stratagems of several famous Generals since the Roman Empire.*

---

### C A A P. I.

*The Exploits of Ardaburius, General to  
Theodosius the II. Emperor of Con-  
stantinople Anno Domini 400.*

**W**hen Baratanes had succeeded his Father Isdigerdes in the Kingdom of Persia; *Socrat. Schol. lib. 7. cap. 18.* and through the persuation of some Magicians, persecuted the Church of Christ planted in that Country: And for their defence, the Roman Emperor *Theodosius* the II. sent a famous General of those days, *Ardaburius*, with a sufficient Army against the Heathen Prince, and *Narsesus* his chief Captain. After the first Battel, where the Roman Soldiers came off with Victory, *Narsesus* cunningly retreats, and in-  
vades

ades the Province of *Mesopotomia*, belonging to the *Roman Empire*, to make that the Seat of the War. When therefore he had gathered so great a power that he seem'd able to encounter the *Romans*, he sent a messenger to *Ardaburius* to desire a parley, that they might appoint between them when and where to fight a Battel. *Ardaburius* wisely answered the Embassadors thus : Tell *Narsesus* from me, That the Emperors of *Rome* use not to wage Battel at *Narsesus* his pleasure. The *Persian* Prince had then all his Forces together, which exceeding the *Romans* in number, caused the Citizens of *Constantinople*, and the whole Empire, to doubt of the success and fortune of the War. But there happened one thing which much encouraged them and the Soldiers to fight valiantly. Certain Travellers going out of *Bythia* towards *Constantinople*, met, as they reported, with a company of Angels, who desired them to salute and hearten the Inhabitants of *Constantinople* in their names, advising them to pray to, and put their trust in God, with this assurance, that they were sent as Celestial Recruits and Auxiliaries to the assistance of the *Roman Army* against the *Persians*; and that they should obtain a famous Victory. Whether this report was really so, or whether it was invented on purpose, as it hath bin sometimes practiced to encourage the Soldiers to difficult encounters, it had that good effect, that none doubted afterwards of success; and the *Roman Soldiers* were more resolute and brave in all their Fights with the Enemy. Insomuch, that at the Siege of *Nisibis*, a panick fear so seized the *Saracens* who were came to relieve that City, and assist the *Persian King*, that only the Alarm and

Dread

Dread of the *Romans* approach, caused them in their Armour to cast themselves into the River *Euphrates*, and venture over; but the swiftness of the Stream swallowed an hundred thousand, who for fear of the *Roman Sword* were drowned in the Water. In this *Persian War*, *Ardaburius* by Policy alone, overcame seven great Commanders of the Enemies. But notwithstanding these glorious Victories, *Theodosius* sent one of his Courtiers named *Helion*, to conclude a Peace with the *Persian Monarch*; but this motion was at first rejected by the Soldiers of the Regiment called by the *Persians* *Immortal*, consisting of 10000 valiant Men, who desired their Prince to give them leave to beat up the *Roman Quarters*, and try whether they might surprise them secure and negligent: But such was the vigilancy and diligence of the Commanders, and courage of the Soldiers, that they encompassed these stout *Persians*, and cut them all in pieces, though they had divided themselves into two parties, to assault the *Roman Camp* with more advantage.

---

## CHAP. II.

### Of Asper a Son of Ardaburius.

AFTER the *Persian War*, and the death of *Honorius* the Emperor, the Uncle of *Theodosius* the younger, a certain Rebel named *John*, attempted to invade the Imperial Crown and Dignity with a considerable number of Soldiers, whom he had Listed for that purpose. *Ardaburius*

*Sacrat. Schol*  
*lib. 7. cap 23.*

*daburius* was sent against him ; but it happened, that as he was Sailing from *Salona* to *Aquileia*, through cross winds he fell into the Enemies power. When *Aspar* his Son and the Roman Army understood it, they made more speed than ordinary to invest *Ravenna*, whither they had carried their General prisoner, following the conduct and direction of an Angel of God, who being sent in the appearance and garb of a Shepherd, as was then reported, to assist the just cause of the Religious Emperour *Theodosius*, against the Rebels. Such inventions have often bin practised by the politick Wits of all Ages, and such reports have been often spread and encouraged to oblige the ignorant vulgar to more manhood and confidence. However: whether that report were real or feigned, *Aspar* suddenly assaulted, and enter'd *Ravenna* through a Lake joyning to the Walls ; which because never any had Forded it before, was less Guarded. Whether then by the power of God the Waters were abated to favour the passage of the Soldiers; or whether the boldness and resolution of the Assailants, attempting to go through a place that was believed to be unpassable, gave an occasion to such a report, is uncertain? Though it hath bin always the wisdom and practice of great Generals to endeavour things that seem'd unfeasible ; and to assault an Enemy on that side where they were most secure, and where they most relied upon a Natural Fortification.

## CHAP. III.

*Of Belissarius the General of the Roman Army in the days of Justinian the Emperour, Anno Domini 528.*

SEVERAL Generals were in the days of *Martinus Leo*. 1. *Zeno Anastasius*, and *Justinus*, the former Emperours, but none much renowned for their Policies and Exploits. *Belissarius* was one of the most remarkable in all History for his brave actions, and for the instability and unconquancy of humane Glory. His excellent conduct, together with his wonderful success in War, raised him to the highest Apex of Honour: but envy, malice, and ingratitude, cast him down to the lowest step of misery, to beg his Bread at the Gates of *Santa Sophia*, the chief Church of *Constantinople*, with this saying, Give a half penny to *Belissarius*. For the Emperour *Justinianus* caused his eyes to be put out, and all his Estate to be taken from him: after that he had by his Wisdom and Valour saved and enlarged the Roman Empire, and deliver'd the Emperours person from a strong Conspiracy, headed by one *Florianus* a Nobleman, and assisted by *Hippiatius*, *Pompeius*, and *Probus*, Kinsmen of the former Emperour *Anastasius*. This act of Valour restored him to the Emperours favour ; for he had bin in some disgrace through the Envy of the Courtiers. He was of no extraordinary Birth, but raised himself through his great skill in Martial Affairs. At that time *Gilimerus* Raigned over the Vandals in *Africa*, where that Northern People had created

a flourishing Empire. *Justinian* proclaimed War against him, and sent *Belisarius* as General, with a numerous Fleet; and well furnished Army. After several Encounters he met the *Vandals* in a pitched Battel, overthrew and destroyed several Thousands; pursued their King from one Kingdom to another, till at last, he besieged him, and took him by *Famine* in the City of *Carthage*. And with him, subdued all that part of *Africa* which had bin formerly under the *Roman* Power: and put a period to the *Arian* Heresie, which had infected all that part of the World. All this was brought to pass, not so much through the Valour and Strength of the Army, as by the Policy and good Government of the noble General, who was excellent in laying of Ambushes, and in besetting an Enemy in an open Field, whereby he was reduced to the necessity either of yielding, or of flying away. This Conquest of *Africa* by *Belisarius* happened about 93 years after the first entrance of the *Vandals* into *Africa*, according to the prediction of *St. Cyprian*, who had so long before comforted his Auditors with the assurance of a total extirpation of the cruel *Vandals*, together with their damnable Heresie. After this Victory, *Belisarius* leads back his Army to *Constantinople*, with *Gelimerus* bound in Chains of Silver. *Belisarius* was sent next into *Sicily*, to revenge the murder of Queen *Amalsuentia*. He soon conquered that Island, and passed over into *Italy* against the *Goths*, commanded by their King *Theodatus*, who was slain at *Ravenna* by his own People. In his stead they made *Vitiges* King. Against him *Belisarius* marched, took *Naples* and the City of *Rome*, which he defended against all the *Gothick* Power, assisted

sted by the *Franks*, and slew in one Sally under the Walls of *Rome* in one day 30000 *Goths*. After the siege was raised, which lasted one whole year, *Belisarius* relieved *Ariminum*, and forced the *Goths* to desire the help of the *Burgundians*, and took their King *Vitiges* in the City of *Ravenna*, and carried him to *Constantinople*. From thence he went against *Cosroes* King of *Persia*, and drove him out of the *Roman* Territories. But *Torila* the new King of the *Goths*, having made great progress in *Italy* against the Emperor in the absence of *Belisarius*; he was recalled, and sent thither again. He overcame the *Goths* again, took all that was lost. From thence he went into *Persia*, to give a stop to the fury of *Cosroes*, whom he beat in fight, and forced to sue for Peace. After this he repressed the *Huns*, when he was Old, and drove them out of *Greece*, having overthrown them in a Bloody Fight.

---

## CHAP. IV.

### *Of Narses the Eunuch General under Justinianus.*

THIS Noble Eunuch was not much inferiour to *Belisarius* in Courage and brave Exploits. When the other was warring against the *Persians*, *Narses* was sent to command in *Italy* against *Totilus*, the Valiant and Subtil King of the *Goths*. He made use of some of the Northern People, whom he called out of *Dalmatia*, to assist him against the

the Gothick Nation. There was a cruel Fight between him and *Torila* in *Tuscany*, where the *Goths* were totally overthron, their King killed in the Field. After this he recovered all the parts of *Italy* that had bin lost from the *Roman* Empire; and when the *Franks* and *Germans* invaded the Borders, *Narses* set upon them unexpected, destroyed above 20000 of them, and recover'd all the booty that they had gotten before. This *Narses* was excellent in chusing a fit time to assault an Enemy, and to give Battel; which made a Learned Historian, *Procopius* by name, to say, that the Virgin *Mary* came and appeared to him in his Prayers to God, to assure him of Success, and advise him of the time when he should give an on-set on the barbarous multitude. Certain it is, that outward Devotion hath seldom wanted Success; and it hath been observed, that Hypocrisie and feigned shew of Piety have been often blessed with prosperous Events in War; whereas Impiety, though it may Triumph for a while, continues not long in its Flourishing Condition. So necessary it is that Men should seek the assistance of Heaven in the critical time of War, and take the Directions and Helps of their God, to second their natural Courage and Valour against their Carnal Enemies, as well as Spiritual. *Narses* it seems is said to have Conquered as much by his Prayers as by his Sword. After *Torilas* was slain, the *Goths* gathered together under *Teja* their King; but *Narses* encountered him near *Cume*, overthrew, and utterly ruined their Empire in *Italy*, restoring it to the *Roman* Dominion, from which it had been violently taken, and detained many years. *Narses* after all these good Successes, was employed in

se-

several Expeditions, wherein he failed not of the same Happiness and Prosperity. But at last, though he had been so Victorious over all his Enemies abroad, he could not prevent the malice and envy of his Enemies at home. *Justinian*, though an excellent Law-giver, could not give Laws to his Passions, and to his proud Domesticks and Family. The Empress *Sophia* caused *Longinus* to be sent into *Italy* in his stead, with this opprobrious Message, That he should come home to spin amongst her Maids. He sent her back this Answer, That he would speedily Spin her such a Thred, that neither she, nor her Husband would be ever able to untwist. To make good this Threat, he sends messengers to *Albanus* in *Pannonia*, King of the *Longobards*, and invites him into *Italy* with his People. After this *Narses* leaves *Rome*, and departed to *Naples*, where he dyed in a short time after with Grief, as is suppos'd.

---

## CHAP. V.

### Of Cosroes King of Persia, and his Unfortunate Expedition upon the Roman Empire, Ann. Dom. 570.

**C**osroes King of Persia, the Son of *Cabades*, was a mortal Enemy against the *Romans* all his days. At his first Invasion, *Belisarius* and *Hermogenes* were joint Generals together of the Emperors Army; and though *Cosroes* was both Wise and Valiant, at *Nisibis* and *Daras* the *Romans*

mans had the Victory, but because they would not follow the good advice of *Belisarius*, they were overthrown by the *Persian* Auxiliaries, and forced to conclude a dishonourable and short-lived Peace. For *Cosroes*, at the request of *Totilas*, when he was hardly beset by *Belisarius* in *Italy*, invaded again the *Roman* Empire, and would not be intreated by the Embassadors of *Justinian* to desist from his Enterprize. He took *Surus*, situate upon the River *Euphrates*, more by Policy than by Force: He reduced *Berea* to Ashes, destroyed *Antioch* with Fire and Sword; took *Seleucia*, *Daphne* and *Apamia*, and several other good Towns, because the *Roman* Army was then employed at a distance off from thence in *Italy* against the *Goths*. So that he met with small or no resistance in this first Invasion. Now there was a strong report amongst the *Christians* of those days, that the City of *Edissa*, since the time that *Agbarus* had been King, who lived in our Saviours time, was impregnable, and that no Enemy could possibly take it, not so much through the strength of the Walls, or any other natural Fortification, as through the Power of *Christ*, who had procured such a privilege to that City, whereof his Friend *Agbarus* had been King. *Cosroes*, to try the Truth of this Report, marched with a very great Army to besiege *Edissa*. He sat down before it, and raised a high Mount with Timber and Earth, which over-topped the Walls. The Citizens, sorely gauled from this Mount with the *Persian* Arrows, resolved to set it on fire, by drawing in the Night a Ditch near to the Foot of the Mount, which they filled with combustible stuff; but when that succeeded not according to their expectation, and the Mount could

could not take fire, they brought out the Picture of *Christ*, which was said to be sent to King *Agbarus* from himself before his Crucifixion. That which before they could not effect, was then accomplished; for the Pile of Wood was suddenly in a Flame, which the *Edisseans* encreased, by casting in Tow, Brimstone, Flaggons filled with Pitch and Tar. *Cosroes* to remedy this, opened the Conduits of Water to quench the Fire, but all in vain; the flame never ceased till the Mount was level'd with the ground. This Story is reported by *Procopius* and *Evagrius*, *Lib. 4. Cap. 26.* with other circumstances. The latter Historian ascribes the Miracle and deliverance of the City not to the Power of the Image, but to the Citizens Faith. However *Cosroes* rose from his Siege, and departed with shame and dishonour. Another strange thing, the same *Evagrius* in the next Chapter reporteth, which happened to *Cosroes* at the Siege of *Sergiopolis*. He fancied the Walls of the Town to be furnished with Armed Men, shining in bright Armour, ready to defend them, when there were scarce any Persons in the City. However, true it is that a panick fear caused him to leave that City also; and a Miracle was reported and believed in that credulous Age.

## CHAP. VI.

*Of Martianus, and Justinianus Generals under Justinus and Tiberius the Emperors, in the Persian War, An.Dom.575.*

WHEN as the *Persians* continued in their Hostile Minds and Endeavours against the *Roman Empire*. *Justin* the 2d. a Kinsman of *Justinianus*, though he were himself but a faint-hearted and letcherous Prince, appointed a brave and noble Captain over his *Eastern Army*, named *Martianus*, whom he sent with new raised Forces against the *Persians*, and to the Siege of *Nisibis*. *Martianus* was but badly provided of necessaries, yet by his extraordinary diligence he came upon an Army of the *Persians* before the rest were ready to fight, and routed them. The *Roman General* laid Siege to *Nisibis*, but *Cosroes* made all hast to relieve the City, sending *Adaarmanes* a Captain of the wild *Arabians* to wast and spoil the *Roman Territories*, which he performed with less opposition, because at that time *Justin* the Emperor had sent *Acatius*, a proud Vector, but a cowardly and ignorant Soldier, to be General instead of *Martianus*. This un-advised Act discontented the Army, that most of them fled and forsook the Siege of *Nisibis*, and suffered *Adaarmanes* to spoil the Country with Fire and Sword, to take and burn *Apamia*, and by the help of *Cosroes*, to plunder *Daras*. Much more mischief would have ensued, had not the Empress sent an Embassadour in season to *Cosroes* to

to stop his Victorious Army, and revengeful Hands; for no great good can be expected from an Army when Generals want Experience, when Officers and Soldiers have no confidence in one another; when the chief Commander is look'd upon as a Coward, dis-esteem'd for his Folly, Pride, Cruelty, or any other Imperfections of Body or mind. The *Roman Empire* was then in a sad Condition, invaded by many Barbarous Nations on all its Borders; so that the Empress, to remedy the Evils that threatned the State, perswaded *Justin* to make *Tiberius*, a Valiant and Wise Man, Partner with him in the Empire. He immediately list'd a Stout and Numerous Army, and the Treasure which formerly had bin converted to Debauchery, he employed to pay his Soldiers. Over them he appointed a discreet General, named *Justinianus*, and sent him to give a Check to *Cosroes*, and the *Persians* proceedings, who were then in *Cappadocia*. The two Armies met; but when *Cosroes* was loath to venture the hazard of a Battel, because of the Numbers and Stoutness of the *Roman Army*: *Curs*, a *Scythian* Captain of the Right Wing of the *Romans*, gave such a furious Charge upon the *Persians*, that they were put to flight, and he pursued them to the place where the Kings Treasure and Carriages were kept, which he brought away with him. The King took the advantage of the next night to fall upon one part of the *Roman Army*, which he did with some success; but when both parts were united, they pursued him to the River *Euphrates*, where were killed and drowned most part of his Forces. A just reward for his Insolency and Contempt of the *Roman Empire*, which he had Plagued

plagued with continual Wars many years. But at last was overthrown, and his Army cut in pieces by *Justinianus*, a Worthy General, and the Emperour *Tiberius*.

## CHAP. VII:

*Of Mauritius, General under Tiberius the Emperour, Ann. Dom. 580. who afterwards was chosen Emperour.*

**T**His General is represented to us a very Valiant and Politick Commander, free from Lust and Debauchery, diligent and careful in his Business, watchful over the Enemy, and wary in all his Undertakings, steady and courageous in all his Resolutions. He had great Success in his Wars against the *Persians*, for he took from them many Cities and Castles upon the Borders, and enriched the Roman Army with Spoils and Plunder. *Famo Cosroes*, a *Persian* General, assisted by *Adaarmianes*, met him with their Forces, but they were both overthrown by the Wisdom and Policy of *Mauritius*, and by the Romans Courage and Valour, when they were forsaken by some of their Auxiliary Troops: for such a disappointment, when an Army depends upon the assistance of others, who either run away, or fly to the Enemy to encrease their Power, is able to give great discouragement, and to dishearten the most Courageous Minds. Now when some Generals have had such Jealousie of any of their Forces, they have by Policy, or some

cunning

cunning Invention, clapt a Plaister to the wound, wisely prevented before the mischiefs which such Treachery or Cowardise would otherwise bring upon the rest of their Army: for a wise General must be furnished against all Casualties, and be ready to meet an Encounter with all the un-expected Accidents which in his reason may possibly happen in a Battel. His undaunted Courage alone is able to give life to his dying Army, and snatch from an Enemy the Honour of the Day. *Mauritius* was a Politick Commander, as may appear by a Stratagem, whereof he was the Author. When he was Emperour, *Caganus* King of the *Avari*, a Northern People, invaded the borders of *Thracia*, and after many cruel Fights, besieged *Priscus* the Prætor in a Castle. *Mauritius* not being able to raise the Siege, because his Army was otherwise employed, sends a Letter to *Priscus* to will him to hold out stoutly for some few days, for that his Fleet, which was now destroying the Country of *Caganus* with Fire and Sword, by his order would speedily return and relieve him. *Caganus* intercepts this Letter as it was going into the Castle; he believes the Contents to be true, therefore the fear of his own Territories made him in hast to rise from the Siege to save his Country from the supposed Ruine and Destruction. *Caganus* return'd again, and in six years time took and burnt about 40 good Towns of *Dalmatia* belonging to the Emperour *Mauritius*, whose rare Virtues might have prevented these Mischiefs, had not his neglect of his Army, and the base Vice of Covetousness, a Vice unbecoming a Prince, procured him the hatred of his stoutest Soldiers.

K

CHAP.



## CHAP. VIII

*Of Mahomet and his Successes ; their first Arts and Policies, beginning A.D. 610.*

OF all the Impostors since the Creation of the World, none hath been so successful as *Mahomet*, and done more mischief to the Humane Race. His damnable Superstition hath bin assisted with so much Policy, Interest and Power, amongst rude and ignorant Nations, that the wonder of its great Successes appears less to a Judicious Eye. *Mahomet's* Birth was but mean, but having the advantage of serving a Rich Merchant, after his Decease, he married his Mistress, and became suddenly very Wealthy. His Mother was a *Jew*, his Father a *Saracen*, descended from *Ishmael*, but by Religion it is reported by some, that he was an *Heathen*; his Name was *Abdala*. This subtle Impostor perceiving how ignorant the Men of his Country were of Religion, the general Debauchery that reign'd amongst *Christians*, their Feuds, Malice, and continual Quarrels, he took from thence an occasion, and was thereby encouraged to proclaim himself a Prophet, and to set up a Religion of his own. The Mysteries of the *Christian* Religion he could not well relish, he was therefore opposed, and called in question for his dangerous and hellish Opinions at his first appearance at *Medina*, and forced to fly, and hide himself in a Cave, where *Secgius a Westoni-*

an

an Monk assisted him to compose the *Alcoran*, the rule of the *Mahometans* Faith and Religion, which is politickly and subtilly made up of such Precepts and Doctrines as are most pleasing to the Viciousness and Corruptions of Men, particularly of the Inhabitants of those *Eastern* Countries. To his Followers he allows all things grateful to their Appetites, and gives large promises of future advantages, but such as reject his Doctrines, he threatned with Fire and Sword, and order'd his Disciples to destroy and plunder them. The *Mahometans* are commonly very modest in their behaviours, and seemingly devout, and abstain from the most scandalous Sins which disgrace too much the *Christian* Profession. *Mahomet* had not long proclaimed himself to be a Prophet before he was chosen General of the *Saracen* Army that had assisted *Heraclius* the Emperor against the *Persians*. Upon the denial of their just Wages, they fell upon the *Roman* Provinces to pay themselves with the Spoils of the Country. *Mahomet* could not have a better opportunity to settle his Religion; for by his Wit and Successes he wanted not those of his Country that sided with him for the present Gain, and help'd him to propagate his Faith with the sharpness of their Swords. He had great prosperity in all his Wars, and when he was dead, *Abubecher* his Kinsman succeeded him, and within two Years took several Towns from the *Roman* Empire. Next to him was *Omer*, and after him *Ottoman*. They all endeavour'd to secure their Interest amongst the ignorant People by the same divellish Arts, Hypocrisy, and Counterfeits. For *Mahomet* had a Pidgeon that would come to his Ear, which he

declar'd to be a Divine Message sent to direct and advise him. When he was troubled with the Falling Sicknefs, he invented, that then the Angel *Gabriel* did appear to him, and caſt him into a Divine Rapture, whereby his Senſes were ſluffed. Theſe three formal Succeſſors of *Mahomet* reformed the *Alcoron*, and blotted out a great many groſs Abſurdities which were there before; and left all their Conqueſts and Honours to *Mortis Aly*, who could not be contented with the Honour of ſucceeding *Mahomet*, but reſolved to ſet up for himſelf, declaring that he was a greater Prophet than *Mahomet* had bin. Their wonderful Succeſs in War, and the great progreſs that they made in a few years, cauſed the ignorant World to believe that theſe wicked Impoſtors were more than ordinary Men. *Homar* took in *Damaſcus*, and all *Phenicia*, with *Ægypt*; *Hally* conquered *Persia*, and ſpread his impious Superſtition all over the *Eastern* Countries. He was ſlain by *Muaviar*, who enlarged his Dominions as far as the *Eastern* Sea, conquered *Cyprus* and *Rhodes*, and in a notable Sea-Fight beat the *Roman* Emperors Navy, and kill'd ſo many *Chriſtians*, that the Sea was dyed with the *Roman* Bloud. Such terrible executions, together with the vaſt numbers of the *Saracen* Armies, and their ſubtile way of Fighting, more by ſurprize and Ambuſh, than by plain Valour, ſtruck ſuch a terrour to all the Provinces of the Empire, that as ſoon as they appeared, the Inhabitants would compound with the *Arabian* Leaders to ſave their Lives, and yield unto them what ever elſe they would require. This wonderful ſucceſs made them adventure into *Italy*, *Greece*, *Spain* and *France*, and to run over all the Sea-Coaſt of *Africa*, where their

their Poſterity continues to this very day. Theſe *Mahometans* are bound, to propagate their Religion, and generally believe that if they kill, or are killed by *Chriſtians* in the quarrel of their falſe Prophet, they are undoubtedly ſaved, and their Souls admitted into *Paradiſe*. This Error cauſeth them to be ſo Courageous in the greateſt Dangers; and the plunder of the Countries invited a great many Vagabonds to joyn themſelves in hopes of Gain, to that Damnable Superſtition, and to their numerous Armies. They conquered *Sicilia*, *Sardinia*, and almoſt all the moſt conſiderable Iſlands of the *Mediterranean* Sea, and beſieged the Emperour *Conſtantine* the IV. in his Imperial City. But their great Navy was ſet on Fire by an Invention of *Callinicus*, a Learned Methemetician of thoſe days, who with Fireballs that would burn in the Water, deſtroyed all their Ships, with 30000 men in them. By this means the *Roman* Provinces were quiet for a while, and deliver'd from the fear of their Cruel Neighbours, till they encreaſed again, and under the leading of *Abdimelech* their King. He recovered and conquer'd *Persia*, *Mefopotamia*, *Armenia*, *Hircania*, and ſeveral other large Provinces, with the Deſtruction of *Muſtar* and *Said*, his two Potent Enemies. Thus through the Ignorance and Cowardiſe of the *Eastern* People, through the Diviſions amongſt *Chriſtians*; the Cruelty, Diligence, Policy and Power of *Mahomet* and his Succeſſors, prevailed in a wonderful manner.

## CHAP. IX.

*Of Carolus Martellus the French General, and of his Son King Pipin of France.*

THE *Saracen* Armies were in those days not only in *Asia* and *Africa*, but in *Europe* also, they conquered all the plain Countries of *Spain*, and erected several Kingdoms there. At the Invitation of *Eudon* Duke of *Guien*, jealous of the Greatness of *Charles Martel*, they entered *France*, and passed over the *Pyrenian* Mountains, under the command of *Abdiran* their General. *Bourdeaux* they took, with several other great Towns that were forced to submit to their vast numbers; for they were above 300000 men with all their Families. *Charles Martel*, the Son of *Pipin*, Chief Master of the Kings Palace, taking upon him the Name of Prince of *France*, encountered these Foreign Enemies with an Army of *French*, *Germans* and *Longobards*, and to oblige his men to stand to the Fight with more Courage, he placed behind them certain Troops of Horse, commanding them to kill all such as should offer to fly away. This severe course obliged them to be so courageous and resolved, that they cut in pieces, as is recorded in History, near 270000 *Saracens*, with little loss on the *Christians* part. This Famous Victory, together with the wonderful deliverance of the *French* Countries from the danger of these Infidels, made *Martel* to be both beloved and highly honoured by all that Nation, so that he had no great difficulty to set aside the Race of the former Kings, and to make way for his Son *Pipin* to ascend upon the *French* Throne instead of *Chiperick*, who was shut up in

a

a Monastery. This hath often bin the unhappy Fate of such Princes as have minded more their Pleasures than the Government of their Kingdoms, and have left to others that charge which they are, by God's appointment, to take upon themselves. *Martel*, after the Slaughter of the *Saracen* Army in the Fields of *Aquitania*, met with two Generals more of the same Nation, upon the Borders of *Navarre*, *Athimus* and *Amartheus*, who brought with them a great Company of the same People. He slew *Eudon*, the wicked Duke of *Aquitania*, and drove all the *Saracens* out of *France*, and encouraged *Pelagius* an Earls Son, to endeavour to free the Kingdom of *Gallicia* and *Leon* from those troublesome Guests. With a very small Company this *Pelagius* destroyed vast numbers of the *Saracens*, and was for his good Service and Valour saluted the first King of *Gallicia*. *Pipin* the Son of *Charles Martel* succeeds his Father in the Government of *France*, and in his ambitious designs; for he confined his Lord and King to a Convent, and took from him his Regalia, with the Popes approbation: when *Pipin* sent to him to know who was fittest to Reign, a Stupid prince, or an Active Subject; the Pope understanding his meaning, gave orders to the Archbishop of *Mentz*, to set the Crown of *France* on *Pipins* Head. Thus the Popes of *Rome* have secured their Interest and Authority by obliging Persons of the greatest Valour, Activity and Authority, that they might help to enlarge and defend their Dominions. For *Pipin* having received so great a Courtesie from *Pope Stephen*, he could do no less than assist him with an Army when he was overpowered by *Aistulphus* King of the *Longobards*, from whom he took *Ravenna*,

*Bononia, Imola, Faventia, Ferrara, &c.* and bestowed them as a Gift on the Church of *Rome*. And when *Aistulphus* besieged *Rome* with an Army at *Pipins* return into *France*, the Pope was forced to implore again his Aid, which he easily granted, and forced *Aistulphus* to purchase his Peace with the yielding of the third part of his Treasures, and a yearly Tribute, which he paid to the *French*. Afterwards *Pipin* at his return out of *Italy* with his Army, conquer'd *Aquitania* and *Goscony*. *Pipin* was a Politick Prince, and because the Pope and Clergy in those days were in high esteem, he did them all the reverence, shewed them all the favour that was in his Power, and they to requite his kindness, raised him from the condition of a Subject to that of a Monarch. When Pope *Stephen* came to implore his Assistance against the *Longobards*, he met him with his Wife, Children and Nobles, three Miles out of his City, and received him with a knee upon the ground, took the Reins of the Pope's Bridle, and led him to his Pallace, whilst multitudes of the People sung Songs to the Praise, and in honour of the Pope, and the new King. For it concerned him and his Posterity to vindicate and extol that Authority, by which he was established in the Throne, and his lawful Prince thrust out. Therefore both he and his Son *Charles* did always magnifie the Popes Power, Credit and Dominion, and would never suffer them to be questioned by any other earthly Judges. *Pipin* founded the Bishopricks of *Salzburg, Ratisbone, Aichstat* and *Frisinge* in *Germany*, and was very bountiful to other places. He was the first who brought in the use of Organs into the *Western Churches*, having received

ved one as a present from the Emperour of *Constantinople*. And 'tis observed of him, that he was sincerely Zealous, and Religious in his perswasion. He endeavour'd to propagate the *Christian Faith*, and to employ that Power that God gave him, to advance his Glory. He suppress'd *Heathenism, Judaism*, and all manner of Heresies, and established a civil Government for the execution of Justice. The Parliament of *Paris* was first appointed by him, not to give a check to the Royal Authority, but that the Kings of *France* might advise with the most ingenious and excellent Men of his Kingdom, who were well acquainted with the conditions and necessities of the People; that all Resolutions and Royal Acts might be made for the common good, and the preservation of the Grandure and Authority of the Monarchy. This King highly promoted also all those who had bin active to establish him upon the Throne, and was very careful not to suffer Virtue in the meanest person to go unrewarded.

---

## CHAP. X.

### *Of Carolus Magnus the first Northern Emperour.*

*Charles* the Son of such a wise, successful and Religious Prince as *Pipin* was, inherits his Fathers Estate, and Zeal for Religion. At his first coming to the Crown, he was solicited by Pope *Adrian* to relieve the *Roman Church*, then

likely to be robbed of all *St. Peters* Patrimony by *Desiderius*, King of the *Lombards*. With a strong Army he marches into *Italy*, and in a notable Fight overcame *Desiderius*, and besieges him in *Ticinum*, took him with the Town, and sent him and his Wife into *France*. All *Italy* submitted to the Victorious Banners of *Charles*, who enlarged the Dominions of the *Romish* Church. To the former gift of King *Pipin*, he added several large and rich Towns. At his return into *France*, he undertook an expedition against the *Saxons*, who were Heathens, and with them he overcame the *Westphalians*, the *Huns*, the *Angarians*, the *Hesians*, but the *Saxons* kept him in play 22 years before they could be totally subdued. The *Christians* of *Spain* desired his Assistance against the *Moors* to relieve them; he marched with his Army into *Spain*, where he had wonderful Success; but at his return over the *Pyrenian* Mountains, the passages were so beset by the Country People, that he lost his Army, and was forced to fly for his Life, leaving *Eginhardus*, *Roland*, *Anshelmus*, and many of his best Officers, dead behind him. *Adalgisus* and *Thastilo*, the Son and Nephew of *Desiderius*, raised some stir in *Italy* to recover *Lombardy*, but them he overcame by his Lieutenants; the first he put to Death, and confin'd the second to a Monastery. After all these Victories and Successes, *Charles* deserved well the name of Great; and to requite his kindness to the *Roman* See, *Pope Leo* the 3d. put upon him the Imperial Crown, and made him the first Emperour of the West, in *St. Peters* Church at *Rome*, upon *Christmas* day, in the year 800. From hence the *Roman* Bishops claim the priviledge of naming  
and

and Crowning the *Western* Emperors, who have often desired to receive the Imperial Diadem from the hands of the *Popes* in former ages.

This *Charles* was a very Wise, Learned, Courageous, and Fortunate Prince; for he subdued the greatest part of *France*, *Spain*, *Italy*, *Saxony*, *Pannonia*, *Histria*, *Ducia*, *Liburnia* and *Dalmatia*. He was very liberal to the Churches and Clergy of his days. 23 Metropolitan Churches inherited his Treasures, besides, he built many Religious Houses and Colledges, and appointed the 12 Peers of *France*, Six of the Clergy, and Six of the Laity. And it is reported of him, that at Supper time he would have some Godly and Religious Book to be read to him. So careful he was for the preservation of the right Faith in his Kingdoms, that when *Nestorianism* was received by the Corruption and Wickedness of two Bishops, he called together at *Frankford* a Synod of 300 Bishops to judge and determine that Controversie. Therefore for his care of Religion, and the regard he had in all his Actions to God's Glory, he was blessed with wonderful Success in all his wars, so that his Fame was spread all about the known World; and he was courted by the remotest Princes, by the *Greeks*, *Saracens*, *Swedes* and *Danes*, &c.

## CHAP. XI.

*How Telerichus King of the Bulgarians found out those that discovered his Secrets to Constantine Copronymus.*

WHEN *Telerichus* succeeded in the Government of the *Bulgarians*, to *Sabinus*, he was resolved to make War against the *Roman* Emperour, and endeavour'd to assault him suddenly, before he could be well provided to resist. An Ambush was laid to catch some of the Emperours Forces: but several of the *Bulgarian* Nobility discontented at *Telerichus*, reveals all the danger to the Emperour, who managed and improved that discovery so well, that he took all that lay in Ambush for him, without shedding a drop of his peoples Blood. *Telerichus* understood that some had revealed this plot to the Emperour, but not knowing who they might be, he found them out in this manner. He pretended that he would willingly make peace with the Emperour, and submit to him upon certain Conditions; and to shew that he had such a real and hearty design; he desired him to name some of his Officers and Noble Men, who were most pleasing to him, them he promised to send, and to entrust with the management of this Agreement between them. The Emperour not imagining the Subtilty of *Telerichus*, named those very Men to be Commissioners, who had revealed all their Princes designs and plots to him. *Telerichus*, as soon as he knew them, put them all to death, and punished them for their Treason.

## CHAP.

## CHAP. XII

*How the Empress Irene overcame such as were of a Faction contrary to hers.*

THERE was a great stir in the *Eastern* Empire about the Images of the Church. They had been cast out by *Leo Isaurus*, and his Successors, *Constantine*, *Copronymus*, and *Leo* the 4th. and those who were for Images, were banished, and several punished. But it happened that after the death of *Leo*, *Irene* his Widow appointed to be Governess of the Empire, during the minority of her Son, re-establishes the Worship of Images, and calls home all that had been banished. These and other proceedings met with great opposition, as is usual, where two strong Factions are in a Kingdom. She being jealous of the number and power of those that did dislike her Actions, resolves to disarm them; and to colour her malicious purposes against them, she pretends an expedition against the *Saracens*, who were broke in upon the *Roman* Provinces, and that she wanted Arms to furnish her Army, and therefore desires to borrow them from her Citizens. The Officers who were sent, were order'd to take none, but from those who joyned not with her in the worship of Images. As soon as they had yielded up their Arms, which they did the more willingly, because they thought that they should be employed against the Common Enemy, she banished them out of the City, and took away their Goods and Estates.

## CHAP.

## CHAP. XIII.

*How Pope Gregory the Fourth betrayed the Emperour into the Hands of his unnatural Sons.*

THE Sons of this Emperour were risen in Rebellion against him, and had raised a considerable Army, with a design to fight with their Father near *Basil*. The Pope, whose Election the Emperour had with some difficulty allowed, came to the Armies, with a pretence to make peace between the Father and his Sons, but with a real intent to find some opportunity to be revenged upon the Godly Emperour. At his arrival, he found the Emperours Army the strongest, and ready to give Battel. To prevent the mischief that was like to fall upon the Sons, whom he secretly favoured, and whom he had stirred up against their Father, he went over to the Emperours Army, as if he had intended to reconcile the Father and the Sons together; but as it appeared afterwards, it was to get some time, that the Emperours Army might be prevailed with by his cunning Followers to forsake their Lord, and to join with the Young Men. This Negotiation was carried on so subtilly and secretly by rewards and promises, and by sowing the Seeds of discontent in the Army, that when they were drawn out to Fight, they went over to the Sons Army, and forsook the poor Aged Emperour, who was then forced to cast himself in the hands of his wicked and rebellious Sons, who shut him up in Prison. But this unnatural deed stirred up

up the Emperours Friends to procure him in a short time his Liberty.

## CHAP. XIV.

*How the Emperour Basil was deceived twice, once by a Monk, next by a Parrot.*

THIS Emperour was very desirous to see again his Son *Constantine*, who was lately dead. A Monk, named *Theodorus*, a reputed Negro-mancer, undertakes to shew him again alive, which he did in so lively a manner, that the Emperour admired him. But his Son *Leo*, as soon as he heard of it, accused *Theodorus* of Witchcraft, but could do him no prejudice, because of the Emperours extraordinary Favour that he did bear to him. But *Theodorus* resolved to be revenged on *Leo*; he perswades therefore the Young Man to carry secretly a Dagger in his Boots, as a spell to preserve him from all kind of Wounds. *Leo* believed *Theodorus*, who went to the Father, and told him that his Son *Leo* intended to kill him, and for that purpose he carried secretly in his Boots a short Dagger. Search was made, and the Dagger found, and *Leo* was, without further Examination, shut up in Prison; at which the people were much afflicted, crying up and down the Streets, *Alas!* Lord *Leo*, which words a Parrot, belonging to the Court, heard, and learned to speak. When the Emperour was at Dinner, the Parrot cried often

often, *Alas!* Lord Leo. These words spoke by the Bird so prevailed upon his mind (for he fancied the Bird to have spoken them by some Divine Inspiration) that he released, and heard his Son's Justification, being thereunto earnestly intreated also by the common people, who had for him a great respect, and by that means found out the wicked knavery of *Theodorus*.

## CHAP. XV.

*How the City of Rome was taken casually by the running of a Hare.*

**A**rnulphus, the first Emperour of the German Nation, was invited by Pope *Formosus* into Italy, to assist him against his Enemies, and a contrary Faction. He took many Towns, and besieged the City of Rome, unto which he had given several fierce assaults; but in vain, for it was stoutly defended by the Citizens. At last, when Arnulphus despaired to take it by force, and was going to raise his Siege, it happened that a Hare ran before his Army towards the breach. The Soldiers gave immediately a great shout and hollow, running after the Hare. The Guards upon the Walls thinking they were coming to give an assault to the City, in a panick Fear hastened away, and forsook their stations and charge, which as the Soldiers of Arnulphus perceived, they entered the Town, and took the City. Thus was Rome once surprized by the guidance of a Hare. Such casual accidents have oft-times been

been of great moment in times of War, when mens apprehensions are awake, and their minds ready to receive any impression, the least surprize, or strange thing unexpected weakens their Resolutions, and makes them less able to resist an Enemy. Therefore wise Generals have often put in practise things of themselves, ridiculous at other times, which in War have put the stoutest Enemy to flight, and overcame the bravest Couragious. For then nothing is to be contemned that may either dismay or disorder an Enemy. And to prevent such sudden casualties, which cannot be all fore-seen by the most experienced and wise Commanders; or by the most excellent Soldiers, though never so well acquainted with the Stratagems of War; no precaution can be prescribed, but that of a steady and well resolved mind, not to be daunted at the sight of the greatest dangers; but in such a case, as it becomes a Commander to animate and encourage his Men, and to have a Remedy at hand for all misfortunes, and a plaister for every wound, so it becomes a Soldier to stand firm, and act the part of a valorous and brave Courage, nor to be terrified with Bug-bears; and though the danger should be real and great, the Resolutions of a good Soldier must master all such sudden and surprizing difficulties, and wade through a Sea of Blood to the Honour of the Victory, which he ought to value at an equal rate with his own Life, when he hath a good cause.

## CHAP.



## CHAP. XVI.

*How a great Army of Danes were defeated by the means of one Hay a Country Man, and his two Sons, A.D. 964.*

**T**He Danes having invaded Scotland, overpowered a Scotch Army in a notable Battel, so that the Scots were all put to flight. At that time one Hay a Ploughman coming out of his Field with his two Sons, meets with the Rout. They being all his Countrymen, he bids them stand for shame, and return to the Fight, and so prevailed upon them by his words and example, that they turned back, and encountered with the Danes again so fiercely, that they were all put to flight, and utterly destroyed. For this good Service the Countryman was rewarded with as much Land as a Falcon could fly over at one flight, which is 6 Miles in length. From this Hay is descended the Noble Family of the Hays, whose chief is the Earl of Arroll.

## CHAP. XVII

*How Tangrolipix the Turkish General was made Sultan of Persia.*

**T**Angrolipix with a party of Turks, was requested by Mahomet, a Saracen Sultan of Persia, to assist him against Pisafiris Caliphon of Babylon.

*bylon.* He had the good fortune to beat Caliph's Army of Arabians. After the Victory, he desired liberty to return home, but Mahomet denyed it him; which so discontented the Turks, that they withdrew themselves into the Desarts and Forrests of Caravonitis, from whence they made Incursions upon all the Borders for their Livelyhood, and Plunder. This obliged the Sultan of Persia, Mahomet, to send against them a powerful Army, which by the skill of Tangrolipix was defeated. Mahomet enraged at this loss, puts out the eyes of Ten of the chief Commanders, and threatens to apparel all the rest of the flying Army in the Garb of Women, and to carry them about his Kingdom as Cowards. These threatnings could not be digested by those Military Souls, whose mishap, not want of Courage, had lost the day against the Turks. They therefore, either out of Fear or Revenge, went all away to Tangrolipix, to encrease the number of his Army. When Tangrolipix was thus strengthened by this unexpected Recruit, he kept not himself any longer in the Desarts and Mountains, but marched with a compleat Army to meet with Mahomet in the Fields of Ispahan, where after a bloody Fight, Mahomet fell from his Horse, and broke his neck. At his death both Armies founded a Retreat, and their Chieftains came to a Parley, where it was agreed, that Tangrolipix should be saluted Sultan of Persia. This was the first Kingdom of the Turks in Asia, mentioned in History, after the leaving of their own Country. Tangrolipix conquered Babylon, and warred against the Arabians, and the Emperour of Constantinople, with various success: and at last he conquered many rich Provinces of the Em-

Empire; partly through the covetousness of *Constantine Ducas*, then Emperour, who taxed all the Borderers, and suffered them to withdraw their Garrison from the strongest places of the Country, whereas before they were free, for the services they rendered to the *Roman Empire*; and partly for want of encouraging and entertaining military men. By these examples a Prince may learn, that it is no point of policy to provoke men of courage by too great severity; nor to suffer his Armies and Captains to want that due regard which they expect and deserve, when his Dominions are surrounded and endanger'd by powerful and watchful Enemies. By the contempt and neglect of Arms the *Greeks* have lost their Honour and Empire, and are forced to submit to the *Turks* Tyranny and Oppression, and are now become the basest of Men in War.

---

## CHAP. XVIII.

*How the first Christians that adventur'd over into Asia against the Turks were decoyed and cut off by their Ambushes.*

THE zeal of our Fore-Fathers stirred them up to the Conquest of the *Holy Land*. Several great Princes had crossed themselves with a resolution to undertake that perilous Voyage. Amongst the rest, *Gualter de Saint Sannear*, a Noble Man, and *Peter the Hermit* entred *Asia* before the rest with forty thousand Men, who drove the *Turks* before them at first, but they,

to

to deceive the *Christians*, made a shew as if they were wonderfully afraid, therefore they forsook the Towns. At *Exorgum* the *Christian Army* encamped, from whence about 3000 were sent to fetch in Provisions: some few Herds of Cattle appeared at a distance, which the flying *Turks* suffered them to take quietly; but the next time that they sallied out to forage, they cut them all in pieces. And when ten thousand more were sent to revenge this loss, they were almost all destroyed by the *Turks* Ambuscado's; for both they and the *Moors* of *Africa* are very subtle in laying them in convenient places; and they seldom fight, but with such advantages and surprises. *Sultan Solymán*, the Son of *Cutla-Moses*, was the chief Commander of the *Turks* in those parts; a warlike Prince, who having got together an Army of 60000 men, engaged in a sharp Fight against the *Christians*, after the taking of the City of *Nice*, and had almost destroyed their Army by the sudden assaulting of their Camp behind them, whilst the *Christian Army* was fighting in the Field. It hath always been observed, that there is nothing hath been more destructive to an Army, and given the Enemy more advantage, than when Soldiers become insolent, proud of their Success, and begin to despise their Enemies, and their Endeavours: for it is an easie matter to surprize such in a Snare, and make them to repent, too late, of their folly. Hundreds of Examples might be produced of the miserable overthrow of those who began to condemn their Enemies too soon.

## CHAP. XIX.

*How Othoman the first, King of the Turks cunningly slew such as intended to have destroyed him.*

**O**thoman's wonderful Prosperity purchased to him the hatred and envy of many of his Neighbours; so that several Christian Captains of small Castles living round about him, resolved in their Assembly to murder Othoman; and the better to effect their wicked purpose, they designed to invite him to a great Marriage, which was to be solemnized between the Captain of Belizuga Castle, and a fair Lady, the Daughter of the Captain of Jar-Chiser. This Captain of Belizuga had the management of the Plot left to him. He sent therefore for one Michael Cossi, a neighbour Captain, and an intimate Friend of Othoman, to prevail with him at the day appointed to be present at the Marriage, for then in the midst of their mirth and jollity, it was resolved to kill Othoman. Cossi, when he understood it, reveals the whole design to Othoman, who desired him on his part to conceal the Discovery from his Enemies, but to tell the Captain of Belizuga that he would not fail to wait on him, and that he thought himself much obliged to him for many former Favours, for protecting his Cattle and Subjects, desiring him to continue his good Offices, more particularly in this time of War, which he had undertaken against one Germeanogli, of whom he stood in some fear. Therefore he entreated him that he

would

would receive into his Castle certain things of great value, which he would send thither to be secured better than in any other parts of the Country: and to tell him also, that he intended to bring his Mother and Wife to be acquainted with his Lady. When Cossi had deliver'd this message to the Captain, he rejoiced greatly, hoping that his Plot would take effect, willing Cossi to tell Othoman that he should be welcome, with all such Guests as he should please to bring. When the Marriage-day approached, Othoman, as his custom was to pack up his Goods, and send them to Belizuga, instead of Rich Household-stuff, he filled his Packs with Armed Men, and cast over them some homely Coverings, and caused Young Men to follow the Carriages in the garb of Women, as if they had been his Wife, and Mother-in-law, with their Servants and Attendants: All this Train he caused so to march, that they should come to the Castle at the dawning of the day. The Captain was then in the Fields, providing for the Solemnity of his Marriage the next day, which was to be kept at a convenient place about Three miles from the Castle. Othoman goeth to meet the Captain; after many Complements, and feigned expressions of Love, Othoman intreats him that his Women might have liberty to enter into his Castle, and retire themselves into some convenient place, which was readily granted. But when these disguised Girls were entered, they played the parts of Men; for being assisted by those who leaped out of the packs, they slew the Guards, and took the Castle. The Captain having notice of this surprize from some that fled out, made hast after Othoman with his Followers, but he was

so

so briskly entertain'd, that he was there slain, with many of his men. *Othoman* pursues his good fortune, and the same night takes the Castle of *Jar-Chisar*, with the Captain and his Daughter *Lulufer*, with all their Company ready for the Marriage. Thus he subtilely turn'd the plot that was intended for his Destruction, to the ruine of his Enemies. After this, *Othoman* took *Nice* in *Bythinia*, *Neapolis*, *Prusia*; and in the year 1300. took upon him the Title and Honours of a Sultan, meeting with little opposition, because, *Michael Paleologus*, then Emperour of the East, was busie with his own Subjects, who would not yield to that change which he was resolved to bring into the Religion of the *Greeks*, for he had promis'd the Pope to conform to the Church of *Rome*. Both Clergy and People were averse to those Alterations; and the Emperour to force them, employed all his Soldiers when he should have sent them against the common Enemy; who in few years got such footing, and by the mildness and easiness of the *Turkish* Government, made many *Christians* to prefer a living under them, rather than under such a cruel and barbarous Emperour. So that afterwards it was never in the power of the *Greeks* to expel them out of their Dominions.

## CHAP.

## CHAP. XX.

*How the Catalonians in Greece overcame the Prince of Athens, and Thebes, by a Stratagem.*

**A** *Ndronicus* the Son of *Michael Paleologus* succeeding to his Father in the Empire, employed Foreign Forces to fight for him against the *Turks*. The *Mastagetes*, the *Tarapoli*, and a party of *Catalonians*, brought into Greece by *Ranzerius* and *Tenza* their Generals. When their Salary was denyed them, and *Ranzerius* slain by the Emperours command; these *Catalonians* became desperate Enemies to the Empire. They took *Gallipolis*, and in pitcht Battel fought with, and overcame *Michael* the Emperour. After this they adventur'd into *Beotia* with 3500 Horse, and 4000 Foot. But hearing of the Duke of *Athen's* was coming with his Army, they encamped upon the sides of a River, in a plain ground, and caused all round about, the Earth to be ploughed up in Furrows, letting in the Water of the River into each Furrow. There they lay, expecting the Dukes coming, who in great contempt of these Vagabonds, assaulted them as soon as they could come to them. But when his Horses began to ride over the ploughed ground, which was then over-grown with Grass, they began to stick fast in the Mire: some cast off their Riders, others were not to be recovered, and they were most rendred unserviceable by this means; so that the *Catalonians* shot them with their Arrows at their pleasure, without

any hazard of their own persons, and obtained over the rest a notable Victory. They afterwards took the Cities of *Athens* and *Thebes*, wherethey seated themselves for a while.

## CHAP. XXI.

*Of the brave Exploits of Philes Paleologus, who freed his Country from the first Turks that came over into Europe to the assistance of the Catalonians.*

WHEN these *Catalonians* were at open defiance with the Emperour for want of their pay, they requested Aid of the *Turks* of *Asia*, who sent unto them *Chalel* a General, with a good number of stout Soldiers. After they were grown rich with the Plunder and Spoil of *Greece*, and the *Catalonians* resolved to stay about *Athens*, and there maintain themselves: *Chalel* with his *Turks*, sent to the Emperour to desire leave to depart, and some Ships to carry him and his Forces over into *Asia*. The Emperour, to deliver his Country from such troublesome Guests, whom he could not suppress by Arms, promised them all that they desired. But when they came to the Sea-side, in hopes to be transported over, the treacherous *Greeks* resolved to cut them off, and to take away all their rich Prey; of which design they having timely notice, they suddenly surprized a Castle thereabouts, where they secured themselves with all their plunder, fortifying it so well, that it was not

not in the power of their Enemies to do them any mischief. The *Greeks* certified the Emperour of their own weakness, and the *Turks* Actions and Power. But they being beset by multitudes of Enemies, and few in number, they sent over to their Countrymen in *Asia* to have some Supplies, which came to them before the Emperour besieged the Castle; for the *Greeks* not proceeding with that speed as such a business required, gave a fair opportunity to *Chalel* to strengthen himself against the coming of the Emperour; who having gathered together some Country Forces, began to lay close Siege to the Castle, but in such a negligent and careless manner, as if their Enemy had been already overcome. This being known to *Chalel* and his *Turks* within, he sallies out with eight hundred Horse, and directs his course to the Imperial Ensign, where, without any resistance, he put the whole Army with the Emperour, to flight, took all their Bag and Baggage, with the Imperial Crown full of Jewels and Pearls, which *Chalel* put upon his own Head in derision of the Emperour. After this Victory, the *Turks* spoiled the Country of *Thracia*, and so distressed the Inhabitants, that they scarce dared to venture out of their Walled Towns to manure their Ground. The two Emperors, the Father and the Son, having no Power nor Courage to stop them, sent for foreign Aid out of *Servia*. In the mean while *Philes Paleologus*, a Kinsman of the Emperors, a Devout man, pitying the sad condition of his miserable Country, thus spoiled by these barbarous *Turks* without controul, requested of the Emperors, that he might be sent to see what he could do against them. According to his desire

he

he was furnished with an Army of *Greeks* and *Servians*, first he encouraged his Captains and Soldiers, giving them many Gifts, and money, took care of their safety and welfare, and promised to them all great Rewards, according to their brave Actions. This caused *Philes* to be so well beloved in his Army, that they were willing and resolved to fight, and dye with him. When he understood that *Chalel* with a thousand Foot, and two hundred Horse was plundering of the Country, he marched forward to meet him. The *Turks*, at the first appearance of the *Christian* Army, made ready for Battel, inclosing in their Prisoners bound, and all their booty within their Waggon. *Philes* encouraged his Men, and with his Eyes and Hands lifted up to Heaven, heartily prayed to the God of Hosts to pity the miseries of his distressed Countrymen. After a furious Fight, and much Gallantry on both sides, the *Turks* were beaten out of the Field, and forced to fly to their Castle, as their last Refuge; but being there besieged both by Sea and Land, they were all slain and taken Prisoners, and the Country freed from a grievous oppression by this devout Captain.

## CHAP

## CHAP. XXII.

*The Stratagems of Orthanes the II. King of the Turks, at his first coming to the Crown, for the Enlargement of his Dominions.*

**O** *Orthanes* treading the Footsteps of his deceased Father, proceeded by policy in most of his expeditions. There was at the death of his Father a certain strong Castle named *Tzurichiser*, situate upon the passage of the River *Sangarius*, which stoppt all the inroads of the *Turks* into part of *Bythinia*, and was a great succour to the City of *Nice*, lately recovered from the *Turks* by the *Christian* Captains. This Castle possessed by the *Christians*, *Orthanes* endeavour'd to recover; for that purpose he disguises himself and his followers in the Habit of *Christian* Merchants, with their Weapons concealed about them, and nothing visible but Packs, and such Wares as were usually carried that way into the Neighbouring Villages. At the Gates of the Castle he desires the Guard that he, and his might have liberty to enter in, and pass through. They without any scruple suffered him to go in, thinking that they had bin Merchants indeed; but as soon as they were within the Gates, they fell upon the Guards, overcame them, and took from them this strong Castle, which gave them an inlet to all the most pleasant Country about *Nice*. So that the Subjects of the Emperor were continually vexed by their unreasonable plundering, and forced for their security to put them-

selves under their protection. By this means he got daily ground, and encroached still upon the Borders of the Empire. *Andronicus* the younger, to stop the progress of the *Turks*, lifted an Army, and met them in the Field near *Philocrene*, a Town in *Bythinia*, where he was defeated and wounded, and for want of good order, his whole Army forced to fly, leaving behind him all his bag and baggage. After this good success, *Orthanes* commanding all the Country round about the City of *Nice* without any opposition, reduced it to great want of Provisions, so that when the Inhabitants complained to the Emperor, he promised to send them 1000 Horse to keep Garrison there, and defend them from the *Turks* power. *Orthanes* had intelligence of this promise, and of the coming of this Cavalry: to prevent them, he resolves to take *Nice* before their coming, which he readily performed by this Stratagem. He caused about 800 of his stoutest men to take the Habit and Furniture which *Christian* Horsemen used then to wear, commanding them to take a compass about, and ride directly to the City, in that way that leads from *Constantinople* to *Nice*. At the same time he sent about 300 of his own Horsemen in their *Turkish* Apparel to spoil the Country round about in view of the City. At that very instant the 800 Horsemen in the *Christians* Garb came Travelling towards *Nice*, and seeing the others plundering the Country, they fell upon them, and overcame them in a Fight, which was all done in sight of the Citizens of *Nice*. After the supposed Victory, they rid to the Gates with some part of the Spoils of their counterfeit Enemies. The Citizens thinking that their promised

misad Succours were come, opened to them their Gates with Joy, and without much examination. But as soon as they were within, the *Turks* made them feel the sharpness of their Swords; and these 800. with 300 more that fled out of fight, and a strong Ambush that lay near the City, joined all together, took and plundered it, and left it to be possessed by the *Turks* to this day. After this, and the gaining of all the Sea-ports about the ancient and demolished City of *Troy*, *Accecoza*, a Captain of *Orthanes*, besieged *Abydus*, a Famous Castle upon the *Hellepont*, which he took by the Treachery of the Captains Daughter in the Castle. She had seen in a Dream a certain Officer Cavalier, of a very handsome Countenance, who helped her out of a Miery Ditch, and performed several other pleasing Services to her. The Image of this Gallant was so fixed in her mind, when awakened, that she longed to see the reality of the Man that was shewn to her in her sleep. It happened that when the Castle was besieged by the *Turks*, an Officer did usually ride up and down near to the Walls. She looked out at a Window and saw him, and found that this was the Man whom she had already in her Fancy and Affection; therefore she provided a Letter for him, which she cast over the Wall at his next riding about, tyed to a stone. *Abdurachman* was the name of the Cavalier. He takes it up, and shews it to *Accecoza* his chief Commander, who there finds that the Amorous Virgin promised to betray to them the Castle, if they would raise the Siege; and if *Abdurachman* would return to the Castle Walls, with some few Followers, and observe her Directions. All things being agreed upon according to her orders, the

Siege was raised: *Abdurachman* comes to the place appointed with a chosen Company. The young Gentlewoman fails not to meet him at midnight, and brings him into the Castle, shews him the Paters Lodge, where he kill'd him, and let in his Followers, who immediately dispersed themselves about, and took the Captain and all the Garrison Prisoners; for they had been very jovial the day before for the supposed departure of the *Turks* from before their Castle; and were then most of them secure and asleep. Thus was the strong Castle of *Abidas* taken by the Infidels, in whose possession it hath remained to this day. *Abydus* is over against *Sestos* in *Europe*, at the Mouth of the *Hellepont*; and these two Castles are now called *Dardanelli*, and are maintained by the *Turks*, as a Bar to hinder the *Christian* Ships from saying through into the *Pontick* Sea, or from invadling suddenly their great City of *Stambul* or *Constantinople*. For that purpose they are furnished with mighty great Guns. After this surprisal of *Abydus*, *Soliman* the Son of *Orthanes* sent over two Captains, *Ezes-beg* and *Fazil-beg* with sufficient Forces into *Europe*. They landed not far from *Sessos*, where by the direction of a *Greek* Prisoner, they took the Castles of *Coiridocastron* and *Maditus*, and next *Callipolis*, with many other considerable places.

## CHAP.

## CHAP. XXIII.

*How Amurath the Third, King of the Turks took Didymotichum and Adrianople by Craft.*

AS soon as *Amurath* came to succeed in his Fathers Kingdom, he concluded a Peace with the *Christians*. The Governour of *Didymotichum* taking advantage of this time of Peace, resolved to fortifie his City, and for the better carrying on of his Work with speed, entertained all the *Masons*, *Carpenters* and *Workmen* he could possibly get. When *Amurath* understood his purpose, he secretly caused two hundred lusty *Workmen* to come over out of *Asia*, and to offer their service to the Governour. He, tho' he had been forewarned by some to take heed of the *Asian* *Workmen*, hired them, but appointed to them their Lodgings out of the Walls every night. When *Amurath* had intelligence of all particulars, he sent *Chafis-Ilbeg* with thirty other stout *Soldiers* to desire work of the Governour, and serve as *Labourers*, to carry *Stones* and *Mortar*. The Governour trusting too much to the Faith of the Faithless *Turks* in that time of Peace, employed them awhile. At last *Chafis* steals away to *Amurath*, gives him an account of all passages; and tells him that if he had any more help, he would endeavour to surprize one of the Gates of the City, to let in a greater number, if they were at hand. *Amurath* ordered all things according to his desire, and sent him back to *Didymotichum* to put his device in execution. *Chafis*



at his return, watches an opportunity. When the *Christians* were at dinner, then did he cause the *Turkish* Workmen and Labourers to counterfeit a Brawl, and to fall from Words to Blows; whilst they were thus quarrelling, one party of them ran suddenly to one of the Gates of the City, where they took hold of the Weapons of the Guard, as if it had been to defend themselves from their pursuing Companions; but they turned them against the Soldiers keeping Guard, and being assisted by a party of *Turks*, who waited near the Town for that purpose, they overpowered the Citizens, and took *Didimorichum*, together with *Rhodesium*, by assaulting the Walls of the latter in the night. The *Turks* generally have had great success by employing such subtle Plots against the *Christians*, and taking them at an advantage. The same *Amurath* took the City of *Adrianopolis* by policy. He sent *Chasir-Ilbeg*, one of his great Captains, and persuaded him to run away with some other trusty Fugitives to *Adrianople*, and to complain and exclaim against the cruelty and hard usage of their Lord *Amurath*. This *Chasir-Ilbeg* with his *Turks*, in several Sallies, behaved himself right valiantly against the Soldiers of *Amurath*, which purchased him a great Esteem, Favour and confidence with the Governour, who trusting too much, whilst they were at a secret appointment with their Lord, when they should betray one of the Gates to him. For *Chasir*, according to his custom, came once at break of day only with ten Followers, as if he had bin going out to hunt; when the Gates were opened, he assaulted the Soldiers that were upon the Guard, and having at hand all his Fugitive *Turks*, they took possession of the Gates, which they kept till such

such as were sent from *Amurath* came to their assistance; then they fiercely charged the Citizens. The Fight continued from Morning till Night, but the *Turks* at last by their continual Recruits, got the Victory, and with it the Noble and Rich City of *Adrianople*, where the *Othoman* Emperors have since kept a *Seraglio*. At this time lived in *Amuraths* Court, *Cara Rustemes*, a Doctor of the *Mahometan* Law. He persuaded his Lord to take every fifth Captive of the *Christian* Youth, of about 12 or 15 years old from his Soldiers, when they returned from the plundering of the *Christian* Countries. These Youths were sent over into *Asia*, to be bred up in the Houses of the Country Farmers, and employed in hard Labour for two or three years, that they might be instructed in that time in the *Turkish* Religion and Language. After this, they were sent for, and trained up in the exercise of Arms, that they might serve the great *Turk* in his Wars, and wait upon his Person, as his Foot Guard. These were named *Janizaries*, that is, new Soldiers, who had thence their first beginning. As the *Mamaluks* also in *Agypt* had their original from Captivity and Bondage; for they were Slaves brought thither by Merchants into *Scitia*, and other Countries, and sold to the *Sultans* of *Agypt*, to be brought up in the Art of War. These, as the *Janizaries* are now to the *Turkish* Emperours, were the best Soldiers of the Prince, and their Stoutest Men in War. *Amurath* enlarged his Dominions both in *Asia* and *Europe*. He invaded *Servia*, took *Appolonia*, and many great Cities, conquered *Caramania*, and in a notable Battel killed *Lazarus*, Despot of *Servia*; but it happened after the Fight, when *Amurath* was taking a view of

Of the dead Bodies; one *Miles Cobelitz*, sorely wounded, rose from the ground where he lay, and went staggering towards *Amurath*. The *Turks* thought he had been come to kiss *Amuraths* Feet, and to do him reverence, or to beg his life; but *Cobelitz* had another purpose, for with a short Dagger, hid under his Coat, he stabb'd him in the Belly, and kill'd him.

---

## CHAP. XXIV.

### *How Tamerlan overcame Bajazets Army.*

**T**amerlan understanding that *Bajazet* was at hand, and with a resolution to fight him, resolv'd to keep his Army in large Plains, not far from *Sebastia*, which he had before taken and destroyed, because he had a greater number of Horse and Foot than *Bajazet*. Some reckon 300000 Horse, and 400000 Foot in *Tamerlans* Army; whereas in *Bajazets* Army were 140000 Horse, besides 30000 *Mamalucks*, and 30000 *Janizaries*, and above 100000 other Soldiers, but old and experienced in War. *Tamerlan* therefore resolv'd to fight on Horseback, and so to draw up his numerous Army, that they might all be serviceable in their order, and weary the valiant Enemy with the Assaults of fresh men. This wise and politick manner of Fight, undoubtedly obtained for him the Victory; for having always a fresh Body of men, both of Horse and Foot, ready to fall on instead of such as were either discourag-

ged.

ged, or broken; he kept the *Turks* so long in play, that they were tired, and forced to yield to the greater number.

---

## CHAP. XXV.

### *The Stratagems of Alis Bassa, the Great Minister of State, under Sultan Soliman, Bajazets Eldest Son, in the War against Mahomet the 5th. King of the Turks.*

**A**fter the departure of *Tamerlan* out of *Natolia*, the Children of *Bajazet* made themselves Masters of much of his Dominions. *Soliman* took that part which lay in *Europe*, *Isa* and *Mahomet* shared what they could keep from *Tamerlans* Lieutenants in *Asia*. But when their common Enemy was retreated, they fell out amongst themselves. *Isa* contended with his Brother *Mahomet* three times in Bloody Fights, and was as often worsted, and forced to fly for safety into *Caramania*, where he lived and dyed in obscurity. *Soliman*, the other *European* Brother, made ready a strong Army, and passing over into *Asia*, took the Royal City of *Prusa*, but the Castle was defended by *Jacub-beg*, a stout Captain, who being reduced to the necessity of submitting to *Soliman* without speedy relief, sent a Messenger to inform *Mahomet* of his distress. *Mahomet* dispatched back the Messenger with a Letter to *Jacub*, and assured him of his Assistance. The Messenger was taken by *Solimans* Soldiers, and brought to

*Alis-*

*Alis-beg* his Great General. When he had read the Letter, he counterfeited others in the name of *Mahomet*, wherein he commended the Faithfulness and Courage of *Jacob*, but because he could not yet send him any Succours, he gave him liberty to deliver the Castle upon Honourable Terms. This counterfeit Letter *Alis-beg* found means to send secretly to *Jacob-beg* into the Castle; when he had read it, he hanged out a Flag of Truce, and desired a Parley with *Soliman*: and according to the direction of the Letter, he deliver'd up his Castle, to the great Grief of *Mahomet*, who was within one days Journey of *Prusa*, ready with a stout Army to fall upon the Besiegers, and force his way to the Castle. *Soliman*, after the surrender of this strong place, dispersed his Army. As soon as *Mahomet* heard of it, he made speed to surprize his Brother, who minded more his Pleasure than the War. But *Soliman* being advertized by one of his Commanders of his Brothers coming at that time when he could not well resist him, consulted how to run away, and sail over into *Europe*: but from such a disgraceful flight he was dissuaded by *Alis-Bassa*, his great Councillor, because 'twas like to discourage all his Friends in *Asia*, and ruine his interest there; but he advised him to make speed, and post himself, with his small Company, about the Streights of *Neapolis*, there to keep the passages of the Country; which good advice he followed, and beat off his Brother *Mahomet*, whom he hindred from passing any further. Whilst he there lay, *Alis-beg* doubting of his Masters strength, resolved to try what he could do by cunning. He sent one of his Trusty Servants to *Mahomet*, to inform him, that most of his Great Captains

had

had designed and agreed amongst themselves to deliver him up to *Soliman* his elder Brother, and the undoubted Heir of his Father; and therefore willed him to stand upon his Guard. Notwithstanding this advice, he caused several assaults to be made to the Passages of the Mountains, but was as often repulsed. At last, when one of his menial Servants fled to *Soliman*, he began to be jealous of the rest; therefore fearing Treachery, and being otherwise incommodated by the Wet Weather, he departed back to *Amasia*, and deliver'd his Brother from a great fear of being taken by him. This Civil War lasted several years; first, between *Isa* and *Mahomet*; next, between *Mahomet* and *Soliman*; then between *Soliman* and *Musa*, who took and strangled *Soliman* in *Europe*. At last the contention was between *Musa* and *Mahomet*, who after the Death of all his other three Brothers, succeeded to all the Dominions of old *Bajazet*, deceased in Chains.

## CHAP. XXVI.

*The Brave Exploits of Huniades the Hungarian, in defence of his Country against the Turks.*

**H**Uniades by his Valour and Wisdom raised himself in the esteem and favour of *Uladislaus*, first King of *Poland*, and afterwards chosen King of *Hungary*, about the year 1440. so that *Uladislaus* made him Vayvod of *Transilvania*. At his first coming to the Government, he

secu-

se ured all the Passages and Borders with good Garrisons, because he had an unquiet and cruel Neighbour, *Isa-beg*, who commanded in *Rascia*, and the upper part of *Servia*, for *Amurath*. This *Isa-beg* had often, by the command of his Prince, invaded the *Christians* Country, and put all to Fire, Sword, and woful Desolation, the more to distress *Belgrade*, and other Frontier Cities of *Hungary*. *Huniades*, with one *Nicholas Vilach*, raised a considerable Army of Horse and Foot, and marched with them into *Isa's* Government, between *Belgrade* and *Sinderovia*, to requite the *Turks* Cruelties. *Isa* met him with such Forces as he had then, not inferiour in number to the *Christians*. At the first Onset *Huniades's* Army retreated behind the Men at Arms, whose fierceness and undaunted Courage the *Turks* could not long endure, but were forced to fly, so that *Isa*, to save himself, returned to *Sinderovia* with more speed then he came from thence. *Huniades*, after a great slaughter of the Enemies, and much Rich Spoil, and many Prisoners, returned to *Belgrade*, where *Amuraths* Displeasure, *Isa's* Loss and Defeat, would not suffer him to rest long; for this angry *Turk* having raised a numerous Army of Valiant Soldiers, sent with them *Mesites* his General, to spoil and subdue *Transilvania*. *Mesites* came into the Country on a sudden, before *Huniades* was well able to oppose him. He put all to the Sword at his first Entrance, and destroyed by Fire the Towns and Villages, to make himself more dreadful to the Inhabitants. *Huniades*, in this distress, was forced to fly to *Alba Fula*, to the Bishop of that City, *George Lepe*, with an intent, by his Assistance, to raise an Army; but being followed by the *Turks* speedy March,

March, before they could be provided, they were both besieged in the City by the Enemies, who spoiled all the Country round about. *Huniades* and the Bishop sallies out upon them, but were forced by an Ambush to retreat. The Bishop was slain, but *Huniades* saving himself, went all about his Government, and gathered what Power he could make up, perswading the People to venture themselves in the just Defence of their Country and Families. With this Tumultuary Army he marches after the *Bassa*, then proud with Success, and laden with Spoils. And for the better carrying on of his purpose, he sent Spies to give him notice of the *Turks* Motions and designs. From them he understood that *Mesites* had given a special command to all his Officers and Soldiers to assault the Person of *Huniades*, upon whose Valour and Direction depended the Fortune of the day. In the Army of *Huniades* was one *Simon Kemene*, an adventurous Gentleman, who knowing of the *Turks* design and orders, offered to change Horse and Armour with his General for his greater safety; which when *Huniades* had granted, he pursued the *Turks*, and skirmished with them every day; at last they came to a Battel, where the counterfeit *Huniades*, ding his Generals Horse, was beset by the *Turks*, and after a stout resistance, slain. But the true *Huniades* in the mean while incouraging his Men, receiving such as were oppressed, rallying such as fled, made a great slaughter of the Infidels, in whose Camp were many *Christian* Prisoners that broke their Chains, and with such Weapons as came next to hand, charged the *Turks* in the Rear, whilst *Huniades* kept them in play, till they were forced to fly. *Mesites*, with his Son, was slain,

slain, and 20000 *Turks*. The *Christians* lost about 3000 Men, but recovered all the Plunder, Spoils and Prisoners. After this notable Victory, he laid the Foundation, and made a preparation far greater, first by returning thanks to the God of Hosts, the Giver of all Success, and causing Solemn Thanksgiving to be made in all the Churches of his Government; next, by acknowledging the Soldiers Valour and Courage, and giving to every one, both Officers and others, their due Praises; by enriching his Army with the Spoils of his Enemies, which he converted not to his own private use, but made them plentifully share in the enjoyment of that which they had got with the hazard of their Lives; and by consecrating to Pious Uses some part of the Spoils, that he might thereby return Thanks to God both in Word and Deed. Never any covetous Commander was ever successful in War. As the private Soldier must do the Work, he must not want that encouragement which Military Souls expect. The best, as well as the meanest, are most willing to venture their Lives with those, by whose Bounty and Liberalities they have been notably obliged. And if Soldiers will be careful to remember their God, upon whose pleasure the Lives of Men, and the hazards of War do immediately depend, he will undoubtedly mind them in their greatest distress and dangers. To despise God and his Power by filthy Oaths and Blasphemies, unknown to our Fore-Fathers, is now the common practise of those, who would seem to be the stoutest Men. This is a baseness and madness which *Atheisme* hath much encouraged; and which can never draw upon their Heads (who give themselves over to such extravagant Liberties) a Blessing,

Blessing, but rather a Curse. And those Armies, where such bold Follies are either countenanced or winked at, can never prosper long. The greatest Conquerors and most successful Warriors, both in former and latter Ages, have bin careful to encourage Religion, and to take with them the Blessing of Heaven in all their notable designs; and after a prosperous proceeding, to return unto God his Praises due, by a publick acknowledgment of his Power and Bounty. *Huniades* is an example of true Valour, which hath always Piety joined with it.

After this Victory *Valachia* and *Moldavia* revolted from the *Turks*. To revenge himself, *Amurath* raised a very great Army, and sent it under the command of *Schech-Abeden-Bassa*, who passing through *Valachia*, destroyed all their Country with Fire and Sword, and entred into *Transilvania*, with an intent to do the like there. But *Huniades* met him with 15000 chosen Men, at a place called *Vascape*, where he drew up some Battalions in form of a Wedge, which did him great service, and could not be broken by the *Turks* Violent Assaults: so that after near five hours continual fight (during which time the Fields were covered with an incredible number of dead Bodies) the *Turks* fled; and the *Hungarians* kill'd above one half of the Infidels, recovered 190 Ensigns, and all the Bag and Baggage of the Enemy. The next Spring 'twas resolved by the States of *Hungary*, that a War against the *Turks* should be prosecuted with more care and preparation. An Army was raised, where the King *Vladislav* adventured in Person to march over the River *Tibiscus* against a vast Army of the *Turks*, and *Huniades* with a party of Horse was sent

sent to beat up their Quarters in the Night. He came so suddenly upon them, that he slew 30000 *Turks*, and took 4000 Prisoners, with a great Booty ; after which he recovered most of *Bulgaria*, so that the *Turks* for their safety were forced to stop up the passages of the great Mountain *Hemus*, through which the *Christian* Army was to pass into *Thracia*, and then being Winter, they poured Water in all the Roads, that neither Man nor Beast might be able to stand or go for the Ice, into which the Water that fell, was immediately frozen. Nevertheless the *Christian* Army marched so far, till the difficulty of the way, and the want of all necessaries enforced them to return back ; at whose Heels *Carambeg*, the *Turkish* General, followed close, to take them at some advantage. When they came to the Mountain *Cynobiza*, he sent a strong party of Horse to hinder the March of the *Hungarian* Army, till he could reach them with the rest of his Troops. *Huniades* and the Despot of *Servia* encouraged their Men, and sent some loose Companies of Pikemen to stand amongst the Bushes and Thickets, to assault the *Turks* Horsemen in their passage. After a very bloody Fight, and the slaughter of many Thousand *Turks*, the Victory inclined to the *Hungarians*. *Carambeg*, in his Flight, fell into a Bog, being deceived by the deep Snow, and was taken by a common Soldier, who sold him to *Huniades* for four hundred Duckets. Out of this Fight fled *George Castrant*, named *Scanderbeg*, who was afterwards one of the most valiant Champions of the *Christians* against the *Turks*.

*Amurath,*

*Amurath*, troubled with so many losses, was resolved to conclude a Truce for ten years with *Uladislaus*, which was granted, and solemnly confirmed by Oath ; but by the *Popes* perswasion, and Cardinal *Julians's*, this Peace was broken, the King and his Nobles absolved from all obligations of their Oaths. An Army was prepared to invade the *Turks* Territories, when *Amurath* was chastizing the King of *Caramania* for revolting against him. Nevertheless *Amurath* made speed with a brave Victorious Army to meet the *Hungarian* King, and at *Varna* encountered with him, when he had but a small number in his Army ; to prevent the *Turks* inclosing in the *Christians* with their vast numbers, *Huniades* drew them up in such a manner, that they had a deep Marsh Ground on the Right Wing, on the Left he placed his Carriages, and on the Rear they had a steep Hill. In this unfortunate Battel *Huniades* put to flight with his *Transilvanian* and *Valachian* Horsemen both Wings of the *Turks* Army, and brought the main Body, where *Amurath* himself was, in very great danger ; so that when he saw the grievous Slaughter and Flight of his Men, he plucked out of his Bosom a Copy of the League made by King *Uladislaus*, and looking upon the Image of *Christ* Crucified in the Banners of the Voluntary *Christians*, he cryed aloud, Behold thou Crucified *Christ*, this is the League thy *Christians*, in thy Name, have made with me, which they have, without Cause, Violated. If thou be a God, as they say thou art, revenge the Wrong now done unto thy Name, and shew thy Power upon thy Perjurious People. He had no sooner spoken those Words, but the *Turks* took Courage, made head against the *Hungarians*, who nevertheless broke in upon the *Janizaries*, where

a French Knight of Rhodes wounded Amurath in the Thigh, and Vladislavus having lost his Horse, was there slain, his Head struck off by Ferises Bassa, and presented to Amurath; who commanded it to be carried upon a Lance, with Proclamation, That there was the Head of the Christian King. His death discouraged the rest of the Christian Army, so that Huniades, after many couragious endeavours to rally his Men, was forced to yield to the necessity of the day. Julian the Cardinal, with two thirds of the Army, were slain, and a greater number of the Turks, which made Amurath ever after lament his dear bought Victory of Varna. The Hungarians, after the loss of Vladislavus, chose Ladislavus, a young Infant, the Son of Albert, and appointed Huniades, during his Minority, to be Governour of the Kingdom. Huniades had another unfortunate Fight with Old Amurath at Cossova, where for three days together the Hungarians notably maintained their Ground against the Turks vast numbers; but at last, oppressed with continual and fresh Supplies, they fled, leaving behind him 17000. and almost all the Hungarian Nobility, dead under the heaps of the slain Turks, to the number of 40000. Huniades after much difficulty and danger, returned safe into Hungary, gathered together his Forces, and made another Army, with which he marched to the Relief of the Despot of Servia, who was assaulted by Fritze-beg, and Jose-beg, two of Amuraths Generals. But as soon as they espied the Ensigns of Huniades in the Field, the Turks fled for fear; and lost many, who were killed in the Retreat, and their General Fritze-beg was taken Prisoner. This Victory was got only by the dreadful name of Huniades. Afterwards, in the Reign

Reign of Mahomet the great, he defended Belgrade against the Turks, beat their Fleet upon the River Danubius, and routed the Turks Imperour and Army, with a great slaughter of 40000. and the loss of all his great Ordinance. This happened in the year 1456. in which Huniades dyed in Peace.

---

## CHAP. XXVII.

### *Of the Famous and never to be forgotten Scanderbeg, and his Adventures.*

NEXT to Huniades, none deserves more to be mentioned than the Noble Scanderbeg, Prince of Epyrus. In his youthful days he lived in the Turks Court of Amurath then King, and for his dexterity in Arms, was highly favoured by the Tyrant, who had poisoned his elder Brethren, and taken away the Inheritance of his Forefathers. At the Battel of Moravia, where Caram-beg was taken, he was a Commander amongst the Turks. In the general Rout he closely followed after the Generals chief Secretary, till he found him in a place fit for his purpose, which he had imparted to some of his most trusty Friends and Countrymen, chiefly to Amesa his Kinsman, a stout Soldier. They all together agreed to set upon the Turks, when they found them few in number, and to kill them. The Secretary he carried aside, and forced him for fear of present Death, to write a Letter in his Masters Name, who (was Grand Vizir) to the Governour of Croia,

*Croia*, the chief City of *Epirus*, to command him by *Amurath's* order, to deliver, on sight of the Letter, his Charge and Government to *Scanderbeg* the new Governour, as appointed by *Amurath* to succeed him, adding several other things, on purpose to gain more credit to the Letter and Messengers. As soon as he had thus forced from the Secretary this Letter, he killed him, and as many of the *Turks* as he could meet with, that they might not give intelligence of his Designs and Proceedings to Old *Amurath*. And having with him under his Command three thousand *Epirots* his Countrymen, who resolved to follow his Fortune, and fight for the Honour and Liberty of their Native Country. He marched with all speed towards *Epirus*, and to the chief City of *Croia*. He ordered the most part of his Soldiers to go in the night, and by secret ways through the Woods and Mountains, to draw as near to *Croia* as they could unperceived, until he had an opportunity to bring them into the City to master the *Turkish* Garrison. In the mean while he took with him a few, only to wait upon him, and went the direct way to *Croia*, sending before him *Amesa* with two Servants, to certify the Governour of his coming. *Amesa* behaved himself with that Wisdom and Discretion, that the Governour could not perceive any deceit, much less when he saw the great *Bassa's* Letter, written by his Secretary, but immediately delivered up the command of the Town, and departed the next day for *Adrianople*. The same Night *Scanderbeg* brought into the City his Soldiers, who were appointed to be near at hand: with their assistance he set upon the *Turks*, and slew them. The recovery of *Croia* caused all *Epirots* to yield to *Scanderbeg*, and the Country People

ple with great joy gave him their assistance, to kill all the *Turks* that were left in his Dominions; the Governour also of *Croia* was overtaken by the *Epirots*, and murdered with his Retinue. Only some strong places and Garrisons were not so easie to be mastered; but *Scanderbeg* having called his Subjects to his Assistance, he in few days gathered together 12000 Men, with whom he besieged and took *Petrelta*, a strong City, by the subtil Tale of a Country Fellow, sent thither on purpose by *Scanderbeg*, to tell the Garrison, that *Amurath* had been lately so defeated by the *Hungarians*, that he could not relieve them, and that they might have any Honourable Terms granted, if they would submit to *Scanderbeg*. After this he took possession of *Petra Alba*, *Stellusa*, and besieged *Srizegrate*, but could not recover that City: therefore rising from that Siege, he wasted all the Borders of *Macedonia*, and spoiled the Country round. *Alis Bassa* was sent with an Army of forty thousand to punish him, and recover *Epirus*. *Scanderbeg*, to defend himself, chose 8000 Horse, and 7000 Foot, and with this small Army he waited upon the Borders near *Dibra*, for the *Bassa's* coming; but he had placed three thousand Men with *Amesa* in Ambush in a Wood, near the great Road where the *Bassa* was to pass with his Army, commanding them not to stir until such time as they should see that the Fight was begun, and that then they should fall upon the Rear of the *Turks*. This order was so exactly obeyed, that the *Turks* having the Enemy before and behind, were beset by a small number; yet they did fight valiantly, until a fresh supply from the Rear came and broke in upon the *Turks*, forced them to fly, killing in the pursuit and Battel



two and twenty thousand, and two thousand taken Prisoners, with all the *Turks* Tents and Riches. After this great Slaughter, *Scanderbeg* mounted his Footmen upon the *Turks* Horses, and with all his Army he plundered miserably a great part of *Macedonia*, and enriched his Soldiers. This great Victory made *Scanderbegs* Name to be famous all over the Courts of the *Christian* Princes, so that in a general Confederacy between them for the opposing of *Amurath*, *Scanderbeg* was entreated to be one of the party; for that purpose he raised an Army, and intended to assist *Vladislaus* at the great and unhappy Battel at *Varna*, but his passage was stopt by the faithless Despot of *Servia*. After that Overthrow, *Amurath* sent *Ferises Bassa* to spoil *Epirus* with 9000 Horse: but *Scanderbeg* having notice of his speedy coming, he put 1500 stout Footmen in Ambush upon the Mountains and narrow ways that led into the Valley of *Mocrea*, where the *Turks* were to pass. These Footmen set upon the *Turkish* Cavalry in such places where they could not use their Horses, that they were all routed and slain, and pursued by two thousand Horse, which *Scanderbeg* had there for the purpose. *Ferises* saved himself by Flight with his broken Troops. When *Amurath* heard of this Overthrow, he sent one *Mustapha*, another Captain, with a Recruit of 6000 Horse to succeed *Ferises* in his Government, with orders to burn and spoil as much of *Epirus* as he could. *Mustapha*, a wary Captain, came with his Troops into the Valley of *Mocrea*, where he lay strongly encamped in his Trenches every night, having placed Scouts and Sentinels all round upon the Hills, to discover the Enemies coming; with 4000 Horsemen he kept his Camp, and

and sent out the rest in parties to spoil the Country, with express orders, upon pain of death, to repair to him upon the first notice of an Enemy. *Scanderbeg* being informed by his Spies of *Mustapha's* wariness, resolves to deal with him by plain Force; therefore with 4000 Horse, and a 1000 Foot he speedily marched through the Valley to the *Turks* Camp, where he kill'd many that were retreating with their plunder, and then assaulted the Trenches with that Fury and Resolution, that the *Turks* were beaten, 5000 were killed, and 300 taken Prisoners, with the loss only of twenty Horsemen, and fifty Foot. *Mustapha* fled with the rest of his Forces to his Government of *Macedonia*, to give an account of *Scanderbegs* Valour, and of his own loss to Old *Amurath*, who resolved to suffer awhile this dreadful Enemy to live in Peace; therefore he commanded *Mustapha* not to molest the Borders of *Epirus*, but only to defend his own Government. It happened at that time that there was a Quarrel between *Scanderbeg* and the *Venerians*, and an open War proclaimed: When *Mustapha* saw that *Scanderbeg's* Forces were employed against the *Venerians*, he begg'd leave of *Amurath* to try once more his Fortune against *Scanderbeg*. For that purpose with a numerous Army he entred into *Epirus*, when *Scanderbeg* was besieging the Town of *Dayna*, where he left some Forces with *Amesa* to continue the Siege, and with 500 Horse, and 1500 Foot he went to find out *Mustapha*, encamped in the upper Country of *Dibra*. Out of the Garrisons he recruited and encreased his small number to 4000 Horse, and 2000 Foot, all old Soldiers. When both Armies were drawn up in Battalia, a *Turk*, advantageously mounted, came out of the

*Turks* Army to challenge any *Christian* to fight with him; his name was *Caragusa*. One *Paul Manessi* desired *Scanderbeg* that he might be the Man to encounter with this *Turk*, which being granted, at the first blow he wounded him grievously in the Head, and cut it off, which when he had done, he took his Spoils, and return'd with great Acclamations of the *Christian* Army to *Scanderbeg*, who seeing how much this had encouraged his Men, set forward against the *Turks*, and with an invincible Courage beat them out of the Field, took *Mustapha* Prisoner, killed 12000 Men, whereas of his own Army there was but 300 slain. The Plunder of the Enemies Camp he always bestowed upon his Soldiers, who met there with great Riches, and according to his Custom, entred again into the *Turks* Dominions to plunder and burn the Country. *Amurath* grieved at so many losses, resolves, with a mighty Army, to march into *Epirus* himself, and try his own Fortune against this crafty Warriour. *Scanderbeg*, who having notice of his coming, made all things ready; he craved Aid of all his *Christian* Neighbours; filled his Towns with Food, Provision and Arms, repaired all the decayed Fortifications, and gathered an Army of 10000 Men to attend upon him, leaving sufficient Garrisons in every City. *Amurath* had in his Army one hundred and fifty thousand Men. He sent forty thousand before him to *Stifegrade*, to make preparation for his coming. *Scanderbeg* marched thither with 4000 Horsemen, a thousand Foot, and strongly encamped himself within Seven Miles of the City: from his Camp he went up with some of his Captains to the top of a Hill as near as he could, to see how the *Turks* lay before *Stifegrade*; at his return he drew

out

out his small Army, and placed them in the Woods not far from the City, unto which he sent *Moses* and *Musachi*, with about 30 Horsemen, to drive some Horses loaden with Corn, as if they had purposed secretly to get into the City. When the *Turks* Scouts perceived them, they charged them, but were beaten back, with the loss of five men, which gave the Alarm to the *Turks*, who marched out to pursue them, in number about 4000. *Moses* politickly drew them away from their Camp to the place where *Scanderbeg* lay in Ambush. He rose with his Men, set upon them with that Fury, that he killed 2000. and took a thousand Horse, with the loss of two and twenty of his own Men. *Amurath* came before *Stifegrade* in May, 1449. he battered and assaulted the Town with the slaughter of vast numbers of his best Men; during which time *Scanderbeg* often brake into one part or other of his Camp, making a terrible destruction, and then again retreated with little or no loss. At one time, when *Amurath* was giving an assault to the City, *Scanderbeg* was discovered drawing near to the *Turks* Camp, and, by *Amuraths* order, was met with by *Feri-Bassa*, who long desiring to fight with *Scanderbeg*, was by him slain, and his Army routed, with great loss: but because all the *Turks* Army were at hand, he speedily retreated from thence with his Victorious Army. *Stifegrade* was afterwards betrayed and surrendered: but *Amurath* lost before the City 30000 of his best Men. At his departure *Scanderbeg* followed, and cut off many of his Army assaulting him sometimes in the Rear, sometime, in the Van, as place and occasion would suffer him. The next Spring *Amurath* returned into *Epirus* with an of Army 160000 Men, leading beo

fore *Sebali*, as a wise Captain, with 40000 Horse to beleagure the City of *Croia*. After a furious Battery, it was assaulted by the *Turks*; but *Uranacontes* the Governour so encouraged his Soldiers and Citizens, that they stoutly defended it: whilst they were then busie in the assault, *Scanderbeg* with 5000. broke into their Camp, killed 500 Men, and was spoiling of their Tents: This gave an Alarm to the whole Army, so that the *Bassa Seremet* and Prince *Mahomet* with his Guard hastened to rescue their Camp, and to deliver it from such troublesome Guests. *Scanderbeg* in his Retreat being inclosed in by the *Turks*, broke through several Bodies of them safe, but with great danger of his Life. During this Siege he had strongly encamped himself upon the Mountain *Tumenist*, not far from the *Turks*, that he might be more ready to plague his Enemies, and assist his Subjects besieged in *Croia*. *Mahomet*, to prevent *Scanderbeg* for the future, had drawn all the best Soldiers of his Army on that side where he was wont to assault them; but he having good Intelligence, caused an Alarm to be given by *Moses* there, whilst he, in the mean while, with a strong party of 8000 Men at Midnight entered their Camp at the farther end, and made a very great slaughter of the *Turks*. *Amurath*, after many cruel Assaults given to the City, and furious Attempts to no purpose, through the Vigilancy of the Governour, and Courage of the Defendants, dyed for Grief under the Walls of *Croia*. His Death caused the Siege to be raised by his Son and Successor *Mahomet*, whose Army was followed, and miserably cut off by *Scanderbeg* in their return homewards, at all places of advantage. But to keep him in continual Play, *Mahomet* sent one *Amesa*

a *Turk*, with 12000 Horsemen to waste *Epirus*. *Scanderbeg* laid for him an Ambush upon the Mountain *Modrissa*, where *Scanderbeg's* Infantry fell upon those Horsemen, and killed 7000 men, with the loss of the *Turks* General taken Prisoner, who was afterwards ransomed at 13000 Duckats by *Mahomet*. The Money was distributed amongst the *Christian* Soldiers. After this, one *Debreas* a Valiant Captain, requested *Mahomet* to be sent against *Scanderbeg*, who hearing of his coming, went to meet him in the *Turks* Dominions with 6000 choice men. *Debreas* had 14000. *Scanderbeg* thought to have come upon him unawares, but he was prevented and discovered, therefore the two Armies drew up, and after a sharp engagement, *Scanderbeg* slew *Debreas* with his own Hands, as he was riding about to encourage his Men. The whole Army, at the loss of their General, fled, and left behind them 4120. slain by the *Christians*. *Mahomet* endeavour'd next to corrupt some great Man of *Scanderbeg's* Army; *Moses Golemus* of *Dibra* was the person pitched upon. He fled to the *Turks*, and returned with an Army of 15000 men into *Epirus*, where he was encountred by his late Prince, and 11000 of his Soldiers killed, with the loss of one hundred *Epirots*. In this Battel *Ahemaze*, a *Turk*, challenged *Zacharias Groppa* a *Christian*, and was by him killed, and beheaded before the Fight. *Moses*, at his return to *Constantinople*, was so derided by the *Turks*, that he preferred to cast himself upon the mercy of *Scanderbeg*, who received him again, and pardoned him, restoring to him all his Goods, which had been confiscated. *Turks* won next *Amesa*, a Nephew of *Scanderbeg's*, promising him the Crown of *Epirus*. With him *Isaak* the Great *Bassa* was

sent with 50000 men, to proclaim him King of *Epirus*. *Scanderbeg* had provided a good Army, but came in sight of the Enemy only with 6000 Horse, with whom he took the way of *Lysa*, a Town of the *Venerians*, as if he had despaired of keeping of *Epirus* any longer, and had fled thither for the safety of his Person. The *Turks* rejoiced, as if they had no Enemy to deal with, or to fear. When *Scanderbeg* saw the *Turks* secure, and that they had the day before ranged about the Country for Plunder and Spoil, he divided his small Army into three Parties, and came upon them before they expected him, for they had not time to bridle their Horses. *Amesa*, making Head first, was taken Prisoner, and his Party defeated. The *Bassa* was overthrown by *Moses* and *Tanussius*, two of *Scanderbegs* Captains, and driven out of *Epirus*. He lost about 20000 men; and *Scanderbeg* but 60. All the Bag and Baggage, and Tents of the Enemies were there taken, with great Riches, by the *Epirots*. Three years after *Sinam* and *Hamur*, two other Captains, were ordered by *Mahomet* to disturb the quiet of *Scanderbegs* Kingdom; but *Sinam*, with 20000 men, was overthrown, and his Successor *Asambez*, with 30000. was defeated next in the Plains of *Ocrida*, himself wounded and taken Prisoner by *Scanderbeg*. One *Jussembeg*, with 18000. entering into *Epirus*, lost part of his Army, and was glad to save himself by flight with the rest. Their misfortune caused one *Carazabeg*, an old Companion of *Scanderbegs*, to request *Mahomet* to venture an Army with him: He trusted him with 40000 men; but when *Carazabeg* had near 4000 Horse, who were cut in pieces by an Ambush at his first entrance into *Epirus*, and been wearied out with continual Alarms by *Scanderbeg*

in

in the Night, the weather proving very Tempestuous and full of Rain, he returned back to *Mahomet* with less loss than any before him. A Peace afterwards was concluded between *Mahomet* and *Scanderbeg*, but it lasted not long, because of Injuries received on both sides. *Mahomet*, to defend his Territories bordering upon *Epirus*, sent *Sereimet Bassa* with fourteen thousand Soldiers, but he was routed in the Plains of *Ocrida*, and 10000 *Turks* slain. *Balabanus Badera*, an *Epirot* born, was the next great Captain, who invaded *Epirus* with 15000 Horse, and 3000 Foot. He sought to ingratiate himself with *Scanderbeg* by Messengers and Gifts; but because he was born a Peasant, *Scanderbeg* sent him a Shovel, a Mattock, and a Flail. This *Balabanus* was three times overthrown in Battel by *Scanderbeg*, and his Armies routed and cut in pieces. At his return he perswaded *Mahomet* to send two Generals with 40000 men against *Scanderbeg*; so that he, and one *Jacob Amauth* entered into *Epirus*. *Balabanus* was first defeated, and forced to fly, with great slaughter. *Jacob* next was killed by *Scanderbeg* himself, and his Army dispersed. *Mahomet* went into *Epirus* next, and sent *Balabanus* with 80000 men to besiege *Croia* before him, but was perswaded to return back *Constantinople*, and leave the command of the Siege to *Balabanus*, who riding up to the Gates of *Croia*, to offer them Honorable conditions, was shot in the Throat, and dyed in his Camp. The Army fled, after the death of their General, out of *Epirus*, leaving behind them their Tents and Carriages. But *Mahomet* the next Spring returned with a vast Army to the Siege of *Croia*; but when neither by Rewards nor Strength he could prevail upon the Governour nor Garri-

rison, and Scanderbeg vexing him every night with constant Alarms, by assaulding and cutting off great numbers of his Men, he departed with his Army to *Constantinople* for fear of other Mishaps. These Adventures of the Noble Scanderbeg are almost incredible; but they are affirmed and recorded to Posterity by *Marinus Barletius*, a Grave Historian. In this History you may see what Courage and Policy may do, when they are assisting to one another.

## CHAP. XXVIII.

*How Tomanbeius the Sultan of the Mamalukes in Egypt, had almost entrapped Selymus's Army.*

**T**omanbeius, the last Sultan of the Mamalukes, knowing the Strength and Numbers of Selymus's Army that was marching to the Conquest of Egypt, resolved to defend himself by Policy. He pitched his Camp not far from *Caire*, in plain Fields, and drew up his Army ready to receive the Turkish Forces; but before them he caused several deep Ditches to be drawn, hiding them over with Hurdles and Turves, and placed his Great Guns ready charged towards the way that the Turks were coming to him: and infallibly they had fell into the snare, if they had not been forewarned, and led round by four fugitive Mamalukes, who fled from their Companions, and revealed all the danger to Selymus the Emperour of the Turks, that conquered Egypt.

## CHAP. XXIX.

*A just Answer of Selymus to his Bassa Pyrrhus, about Goods unjustly taken from the Proprietors.*

**W**hen Selymus became very sick, and saw that he must shortly dye, he lamented and complained of his Mortal Condition to his beloved Bassa Pyrrhus, who, to comfort him, began to discourse of divers other things, to draw away his thoughts from such an unpleasant Object. And amongst the rest, he asked him how he would bestow that great Wealth that had been but a little before taken from some Persian Merchants, and whether he would not build therewith some Famous Hospital for the relief of the Poor. But Selymus, though a cruel Prince, yet he returned him this just Answer, What Pyrrhus, wouldst thou have me to bestow other Mens Goods, wrongfully detained from them, upon Works of Charity and Devotion, and offer to God what is none of mine own. No, I rather command thee to see that those Goods be restored to their right Owners. This was an excellent saying of that Mahometan Emperour, which condemns the Unjustice and Oppression of many Christians, who are so far from Restitution, that they endeavour, whilst they live, to fill their Coffers with the spoil and plunder of other mens Good, and make no conscience to encrease their Childrens Estates with the cursed Robberies of the Poor and Helpless.

## CHAP. XXX.

*A Stratagem of Villerius, Great Master of Rhodes, to get Intelligence of the Turks Camp and Condition.*

When Solymán caused Rhodes (that Bulwark of Christendom) to be besieged; certain Marriners, well skilled in the *Turkish* Language, in the Habit of *Turks*, were sent by Villerius Great Master, in a little Boat full of Apples, Plumbs, Mellons, and such like seasonable Fruits, to sell them to Soldiers that lay in their Trenches; and that they might seem to come from the main land, he caused them to sail out of the Harbour in the Night, and to land in the Island, at the place where there is but a narrow passage from the Continent. The *Turks* Soldiers thinking them to be real *Turks*, came over from the main Land, bought their Fruits, and talked freely to them of their Discontents and Grievances to continue in that dangerous Siege, where they had lost so many brave Men, desiring them secretly to carry some of them over to the Continent. The Marriners seemed at first very unwilling, because of the danger; at last they yielded to take in about three of the most considerable of them, whom they could easily master: but instead of carrying them over to the *Turks* Dominions, they landed them in the Harbour of the City, and deliver'd them to the Great Master, who informed himself of all things concerning the *Turks* Camp and Losses, and that the Soldiers were ready to mutiny, and loath to continue the Siege.

CHAP.

## CHAP. XXXI.

*How Solymán punished the Garrison Soldiers of the Castle of Buda, for betraying their Captain.*

Thomas Nadaſtus was left in that Castle to defend it for Ferdinand, who had lately been crowned King of Hungary. When Solymán with a vast Army had taken the Town, and was besieging this Castle, the German Soldiers there in Garrison, would not be perswaded to hold out against the Enemy, but fancied that the Castle had been undermined by the *Turks*, and that they did smell the Gunpowder: so strangely fear had possessed their Minds, that no perswasion of the Governour could oblige them to a stout defence. When they saw that he by no means would consent to a surrender, they bound him, and then capitulated with Solymán to yield up this strong Fort, together with their Captain Prisoner. But when this courageous Prince understood the laziness of the Garrison Soldiers, and the Faithfulness and Valour of the Governour, he set him at liberty, but caused his unworthy Germans to be cut in pieces by his Janizaries; a just reward of Traytors and base Cowards, who betray their Trust by their fearful dispositions.

CHAP.

## CHAP. XXXII.

*The Valour of Nicholas Jureichitz, in defending the little Town of Gunza in Hungary against 500000 Men in Selymus's Army.*

THIS Town of *Gunza* was but small and weak, but stoutly defended by *Nicholas Jureschits* the Governour, against *Solymans* vast Army. *Abraham* the great Bassa had a particular kindness for this *Nicholas*, because he knew him to be a brave Soldier, and had been intimately acquainted with him when he was Embassadour at *Constantinople*. As a Token therefore of his kindness, he sent him a Messenger at his arrival, to wish him to deliver up the Town, with large promises and threatnings: but when he saw nothing would work upon the courageous Governour, he caused the Town to be undermined, and the Walls to be blown up in three places; after this he gave several furious Assaults, but was still beaten back by the Defendants: and to trouble them the more, the Bassa had placed a Battery on the North-side of the Town upon a high Hill, from whence he did kill the Besieged as they were standing to defend their Breaches. But the Governour raised speedily a Curtain behind his Soldiers to keep off the *Turks* Shot. After this two great Mounts were cast up with Earth and Faggots, and the Town Ditch level'd, to facilitate their next Assaults; but the *Turks* were again several times driven back with great loss and shame. At last the

the Soldiers within being for the most part either wounded or killed, the *Turks* had set up eight Ensigns upon the Walls, and the besieged began to shrink away, when suddenly the Women and Children in the Town gave a very great shout and cry, which so dismayed the *Turks*, who thought that the Town had been yet full of Soldiers, that they began to look back, and retreat apace. At this sight the Governour and Soldiers took Courage, and charged them so furiously, that they forsook the Walls, and could not be perswaded, nor threatened, by their Leaders to another Assault. When the Great *Turk* saw the numbers of his men slain, and that his Army had given no less than thirteen Assaults, with great loss and dishonour, in his rage he threatened not to leave a stone standing in the Town. But *Ibrahim* Bassa, desirous to save the Governour, when *Solymans* anger was over, perswaded him not to dishonour himself any longer about such an inconsiderable Town, telling him, that there was no man but would think him able to take and destroy such a small place in time, but that it were more Wisdom to preserve his Soldiers for greater designs, and to depart from before this mean Village: and therefore he would call the Governour to him, to acquaint him, that out of his generosity and love that he did bear to men of Valour, he would give him the Town, and all that was therein. When *Solyman* had suffered himself to be perswaded, the Governour was sent for, and Hostages deliver'd into the Town instead of him. The Bassa discoursed with him, and asked him, why he would offer to resist his Great Masters Power, when every one else yielded, and depend upon the relief of King *Ferdinand*, not likely to come to.

to his Assistance. The Governour answered, that he had done nothing but what became a Man of Courage; and that for his part, he knew King *Ferdinand* would assist him as soon as he could, but that his chief dependance was upon his God, who would not be wanting to his Endeavours. The Bassa in conclusion told him, that *Solyman* might easily destroy him and his Town, but that he was so courteous, and so great a favourer of Valiant Men, that for his sake the Town should be spared, but that he must receive into the Town a Captain and ten *Janizaries* in sign of submission. Thus was the little Town of *Gunza* saved from the hands of the cruel *Turks* by the good providence of God, and the Valour, Policy and Faithfulness of the brave Governour.

---

### CHAP. XXXIII.

*How the Island and City of Curzola was defended by the Women, when the Men had forsaken it.*

IN the *Adriatick* Sea there is an Island belonging to the *Venetians*, named *Curzola*. The *Turks*, commanded by *Perteau* Bassa, Admiral to *Selimus* the 2d. landed in that Island, with an intent to plunder and spoil it. *Anthonyus* *Catarenus*, the *Venetian* Governour, distrusting his own strength, in the dead of the night fled up into the Mountains, and left the City to the pleasure of the invading Enemy. The Townsmen followed their Governour, and left behind about 20 Men and 80 Women

men, besides Children. When this weak company saw how they were betrayed, they took courage, and rather than they would fall into the hands of the cruel *Turks*, they resolved all to dye fighting. For that purpose they armed themselves with such Weapons as they had, and stood to defend their Walls; when the *Turks* the next day drew near, they received them so briskly, animated by despair, that they were driven back. And it happened, by the mercy of God, that a Tempest began to rise, whilst the assault was giving; so that the *Turkish* Captains discouraged thereby from any longer stay, shipped aboard their men, and sailed away to a Haven more secure. Thus was this Town and Island saved by the good Providence of God, and the stoutness of the Women.

---

### CHAP. XXXIV.

*The Great and Famous Battel of Lepanto, between the Christian and the Turkish Fleets, Ann. Dom. 1571.*

THE *Turks* Fleet was commanded by *Perteau* and *Haly* two Bassa's, by *Cassanes* the Son of *Barbarussa* *Uluzales*, and *Chiroche* Governour of *Alexandria*; by *Carabuzes*, Governour of *Cilicia*, and *Mahomet* Governour of *Eubæa*, and many other Sea-Captains of great Experience, and known Valour. The *Turks* Fleet consisted of two hundred and fifty Gallies, fifty Galliot, and twenty Brigandines, with other small Vessels; they had on board,



board, besides Seamen and other Soldiers, twelve thousand *Janizaries* and *Saphies*. The *Christians* were *Venerius*, the *Venetian* Admiral, with 180 Gallies, 6 Galeasses, and two tall Ships. *Don John* of *Austria* commanded 81 Gallies of *Spaniards* and *Malteses*. *Columnius* was Admiral over 12 Gallies of the Pope. They had on board besides Seamen 20000 Fighting Men. These two Fleets met over against the Gulph of *Lepanto* the 7th of *October* in the Afternoon, 1571. The *Turks* sailed out in four Squadrons, and came in the same order as they saw the *Christians* observe. Before the *Christians*, lay at Anchor, six Galeasses full of Great Guns, which sunk many of the *Turks* Gallies, and disordered their Fleet; they had two other disadvantages in the Fight, the Sun and the Wind were against them, so that the smok of the Guns much troubled them. But notwithstanding this discouragement, they fell into their order, and with hideous cries, came fiercely on against the *Christians*. *Haly* grappled with the Admiral of the *Christians*, commanded by *Don John*; but being assisted with the stoutest men of the Fleet, he boarded the *Turks*, and after a great slaughter, and new supplies from both sides, was forced to receive back his men; after three hours continual fighting, when he saw the *Turks* to be wearied out, then did he command up 400 stout men, which he had kept as a reserve for a time of most need. As soon as these unexpected supplies began to charge the Enemy, the *Turks* were discouraged. *Hali* being wounded in the Head, was brought to *Don John*, and his Head cut off, was shewed to the *Turks* near by, and a Flag with the Cross hang'd out upon his Gally, with a joyful Acclamation, which ran through all the Fleet,

*Victoria,*

*Victoria, Victoria, Victoria.* *Venerius* encountred with *Perteau*, took his Gally after a fierce fight, and forced him to fly away in his Long Boar. *Chiroche* the *Turk*, had some advantage over *Barbadius* the *Venetian*, who being mortally wounded; the *Turks* being thereby encouraged, had mastered his Gally, had not two *Venetian* Captains come in to their Relief, who beat off the *Turks*, and took their Gallies. As soon as *Chiroche* was slain, with *Haly*, and *Perteau* fled, the *Turks* were thereby much disheartned, and after a cruel and doubtful fight many hours, the main Battel and the left Wing of the *Turks* were totally overthrown. In the right Wing was *Auria* the *Spanish* Admiral against *Uluzales*, who endeavour'd to encompass in the *Christians* small number; therefore in expectation of some advantage, he retreated farther in the Sea, and enclosed in 12 *Venetian* Gallies on a sudden, and carryed them, after he had slain the Defendants, only *Benedictus Superantius*, a Noble *Venetian*, seeing himself mortally wounded, his men almost all slain, and his Gally taken, went speedily to the Powder, and set fire to it, blowing himself up with the *Turks*. When *Uluzales* understood that the *Christians* were victorious in the other parts of the Fleet, and were coming to assist their Fellows, he left the Gallies that he had taken, and sayled away for fear. *Cardonius*, a *Spanish* Captain, coming then in to the rescue of his Fellows, pursued him, but was set upon by 15 *Turks* Gallies that turned back upon him, slew him and most part of his Soldiers and Marriners, and had undoubtedly taken his Gally, had not *Don John*, *Columnius* and *Venerius* been near at hand. This Fight lasted five hours, in which about 20000 *Turks* were slain, amongst which were

were *Haly Bassa* the General, *Chiroche*, *Cassanes*, *Malamur*, *Gider*, *Cassambei*, *Proni*, *Aga*, *Mustapha*, *Zelibi*, *Caracoza*, a Famous Pyrat, were chief. 3500 were taken Prisoners, the chief were *Achmat* and *Mahomet*, the Sons of *Haly*, and Nephews to Sultan *Selimus*, with others of great account. There were 161 Gallies taken, and about 40 sunk: of other Vessels were taken about 60. The Admiral Gally of the *Turks* was the most beautiful. The *Christians* lost 7566. who were killed, and about 7000 wounded. This great Victory recovered about 12000 *Christians* out of Captivity, and caused great rejoycing in *Italy*, in *Spain*, and all over the *Christian* Countries. It was the greatest overthrow that the *Turks* have ever had at Sea. But one of the *Turkish* Prisoners hearing some compare it to the loss of *Cyprus*, which had been but a little before taken from the *Venetians*, he affirmed, that it was not so great as the *Venetians* loss: for, said he, by the taking of *Cyprus* from them, they have lost a Limb of their State, which will never be recovered; but this loss at Sea is like the shaving of the Sultans Beard, which will grow again in a little while. This overthrow so troubled *Selimus*, that he commanded all the *Christians* of his Dominions to be slain, but was dissuaded from this barbarous Cruelty by *Mahomet Bassa*.

## CHAP. XXXV.

*The Brave Exploits of Sigisimundus Bator against the Turks in Transilvania.*

THIS Prince was one of the Noblest and most Fortunate Generals of our late years. When the *Turks*, his unquiet neighbours, together with the *Tartars* invaded his Dominions: he set upon them, and made a great slaughter of them. He recovered *Valachia* and *Moldavia* from the *Turks*, with the assistance of the two Princes of that Country. *Sinan* was sent with a vast Army into *Valachia*, where the Prince met him, and in a great Battel, which lasted from morning till night, overthrew the *Turks* Army with a wonderful slaughter. *Sinan* fled, and left all his Tents and Great Guns, with Rich Spoils, to the *Christian* Army. To revenge this great Loss, *Sinan Bassa* the *Turks* chief General, raised 70000 men to drive the Prince out of *Valachia*. He came to *Tergovista*, where he encamped with his Army, but at the report of the Princes coming, the *Turks* were so terrified, that they fled, and *Sinan* himself dreaded a second Encounter with so successful and valiant a General, who pursued him from place to place as far as *Tergovista*, where the Prince cut in pieces 4000 *Turks*, who had bin plundering the Country, and recovered 60000 Head of Cattle, which they had taken out of *Valachia*. The Castle of *Tergovista*, which was secured by *Sinan* with a Guard of 4000 *Turks*, commanded by *Hassan Bassa*, was taken, and all the Soldiers put to the Sword. The Prince following the chase, took *Bucaresta*, forsaken by the

the *Turks*, and overtook the Rear of their Army at a Bridge made over the *Danubius*, *Sinan*, who to stop the Princes course, burnt the farther end of the Bridge, and exposed many of his men to the fury of the *Christian* Army, or to the unmerciful Waves of the River. He marched next to a Castle which defended another passage over the same River, where 700 *Turks* were in Garrison. The Castle he took, and put them all to the Sword, for refusing to yield upon Summons. This Prince blasted the Glory of *Sinan Bassa*, which he had many years gotten by his skill in War, and recovered three fruitful Provinces from the *Turks*, *Transilvania*, *Valachia*, and *Moldavia*: a greater loss they never received at one time by Land.

---

## CHAP. XXXVI.

### *How Zellaly the Turkish Rebel, overcame the Bassa of Bosna by Craft.*

**M**ahomet the 3<sup>d</sup>. was grievously troubled by his Rebellious Subjects in *Asia*, who had got together in such considerable numbers, and had such brave Generals to command them, that all his Forces were not able to subdue them. They overcame and cut in pieces several of his best Captains. At last he was advised to circumvent them, and by fair means to draw them into his Service, and into such places as he might take them off at his pleasure. *Zellaly* was one of the most considerable; to him he caused the Govern-  
ment

ment of *Bosna*, a rich Province, to be offered, if he would come over with 12000 men, which he had under his command, into *Europe*, to assist in the Wars of *Hungary*. *Zellaly* suffered himself to be persuaded by this great Preferment, and to satisfy the expectation of his Lord, did him wonderful service in *Hungary*. But when the Great *Bassa* was departed towards *Constantinople*, *Zellaly* withdrew himself into his promised Government, to take possession of it, and came to the chief Town of that Province, named *Bagualue*, only with 3000 men, and encamped in a meadow before the Town. *Zeffer Bassa* being then Governour; and having no orders from *Mahomet* to depart from his Government, fretted to see the boldness of the Rebel, and resolved to correct him. He called therefore together his Soldiers, and marched out against *Zellaly*, in hopes to cut him in pieces with his Slender and weak Company. When *Zellaly* understood his purpose, and saw how unable he was to withstand him, he in the night caused several Fires to be made round about his Camp, and then departed with his Forces. *Zeffer* hearing of his Flight, imagined that fear had obliged him to withdraw himself, therefore he hastened to *Zellalies* Camp, which he gave to be plundered by his Soldiers; whilst they were plundering and carrying away the Spoils, *Zellaly* returns with his 3000 stout and valiant Horsemen, who finding them in disorder, and secure, slew 6000 of the *Bassa's* men, and obliged him to fly away with many of his Followers. After this Victory, to improve it to his best advantage, he marched speedily to all the chief places of the Province, and forced the Inhabitants to swear unto him Allegiance: from every corner he gathered

thered many brave Horses, Armour and Money to serve him in time of need. All this he secured in the strong Town of *Balnake*: and though he had been often sent for to *Constantinople* by the Sultan with promises of great Honour and Advantage; he would never suffer himself to be perswaded to go so near his offended Lord, or within his reach, but excused himself in the best manner he could.

## CHAP. XXXVIII.

*Of the Battel of Crescy, between King Edward the 3d. of England, and King Philip of France, Ann. Dom. 1343.*

**I**N the *English* Army were 4000 men at Arms, 10000 Archers, with some *Welsh* and *Irish* Auxiliaries. All commanded by the King in person, and *Edward* Prince of *Wales*. The whole Army consisted of 30000 Men. He landed in *Normandy*, and dividing his Forces into three Bodies, he marched into the Country, and took several considerable Towns. In the *French* Army were 60000 men, of whom 3000 were Barons, Knights and Gentlemen. The Duke of *Alanson* led the Van: The Earl of *Savoy* commanded the Rear: and the King of *France* himself was in the main Battel. But the *English* Army was brought up, the Vanguard by the Prince, the main Body by King *Edward*, and the Rear by the Earls of *Arundel* and *Northampton*, the Lords *Ross*, *Willoughby*, *St. Albans* and *Multon*. In the *French* Army some remarkable passages happened in the beginning of the

the Fight, which gave a great discouragement to the *French* Forces. They had in their Army 1500 Cross-Bows, *Genouesers*, stout and valiant Men. These had been placed in the front of the Duke of *Alansons* Battel by a wise Commander in the Army; but the Duke envying the Honour of that place to those Strangers, caused them to be removed to another. This discontented these *Italians*, and made some disorder to be in that Battel; which being taken notice of by King *Edward*, he immediately commanded the Prince to advance, and charge, which was performed with that resolution, that the *French* were routed. King *Philip* seeing his Brother worsted by the *English*, came into his Assistance with his Body. The Fight was fierce, bloody and doubtful a great while, till *Philip's* Horse being killed under him, he was conveyed out of the Battel. This discouraged all the rest, and put them to a retreat. When the Prince was engaged in the midst of his Enemies, he sent to King *Edward* to come in, but the King refused, and bid him expect no help, which made the *English* fight more desperately, so that 30000 *French* were killed, of which about 12000 were of great quality, with the King of *Bohemia* and the Earl of *Flanders*. After this great Victory, King *Edward* besieged *Chalice*, and took it. In the same year the Queen obtained a great Victory over the *Scots*, commanded by King *David*; 15000 *Scots* were there slain, with many Earls and Lords of *Scotland*. After the winning of *Chalice*, the King, understanding the Governor intended to betray the Town for a great sum of Money, goes over, receives the Money, and marched out to encounter with the *French* Forces in a disguise. He was twice dismounted by one

*Ribemount*, who being taken Prisoner, the King, for his Valour, released him without ransom.

## CHAP. XXXIX.

### Of the Famous Battel of Poictiers.

**T**HE *English* Skill and Courage in War never appeared more in any Fight than in this of *Poictiers*. The Prince had in his Army 2000 Horse, and 8000 Archers, with some Auxiliaries, drawn out of the *French* Provinces; with these Forces he marched out of *Bourdeaux* towards *Poitou* and *Berry*, to draw King *John* out of *Normandy*. When he heard of the Princes March, he went to meet him with 30000 Horse and Foot. The *English* wisely entrenched themselves amongst the Vineyards, and might have been in time starved there by the *French*, who with their numbers were able to inclose and besiege them round: but the Kings Courage, and the *French* fury could not suffer the sight of so small a party, without a present Assault. 300 of the ablest men of the *French* Army were ordered to begin, and draw the *English* to a Battel; but their defeat encouraged the *English* to encounter with three Bodies of the *French* Army; the right Wing was commanded by the Constable; the left, by the *Dolphin*; the main Battel was conducted by King *John* of *France*. All three Battels were overthrown one after another; 5000 were slain. The King himself and his Son *Philip* were taken Prisoners, honourably entertain'd, and carryed to *Bourdeaux*, and from thence

thence into *England*. The Wisdom and Courage of the Prince was here very remarkable in chusing such a ground to fight, as rendred the *French*'s chief strength of Horse useless; in sending seasonable Supplies to such as were overpowred; and in the disorder of the *French* Army, in falling on with his whole strength. How Glorious did the *English* Valour appear to all Foreign Nations, when our Princes and our Gentry were so nobly employed in Foreign Countries; and with such wonderful success, that two of the greatest Monarchs of *Europe*, commanding over the most Warlike People, were at one time taken Prisoners, and forced to submit to the Crown of *England*!

## CHAP. XL.

### The brave Exploits of Robert Bruce, King of Scotland.

**A**FTER the death of *Alexander* King of *Scotland*, *Baliol* and *Bruce* were Competitors for the Crown. To save the *Christian* Blood, the difference was left to the Arbitration of King *Edward* of *England*, lately returned from the *Holy Land*. *Edward* minding the increase of the Honour of the *English* Crown more than the justice of the Cause, grants the Royal Dignity of *Scotland* to King *Baliol*, upon condition that he would do him homage for it. When *Baliol* had yielded to this, he was Crowned at *Scone*. But *Bruce*, with his Party, held out in opposition to him, and would by no perswasion quit his claim.

*Baliol*, after his Coronation, being discontented with King *Edward*, upon an affront offered to him, revolts from the *English*, and takes up Arms, but being overcome and taken Prisoner, King *Edward* subdues most part of *Scotland*, and resolves to unite it to the Crown of *England*. The *Scotch* were soon weary of a Foreign Government; they joyn themselves therefore with *Bruce*, and encourage his Title, that they might shake off the *English* Yoke. *Bruce* begins with a small Party, but finds Victory and Success, which quickly drew to him all his discontented Countrymen. *John Cuinin*, Earl of *Buchan*, first gathered an Army to oppose him, but durst not venture a Battel, which made him desire a Truce: shortly after *Bruce* fell sick, and Earl *Cuinin* taking this opportunity, resolved to recover from him what was lost, and to fall upon his Army. *Bruce*, though so weak, that he could not sit on Horseback, without being supported by two Servants, encourageth his Men by his presence and Conduct: for the sight and courage of a chief Commander is of great moment in War. *Bruce's* Forces were so animated by the Kings presence, though sick and weak, that fearing no danger, they fought desperately, and routed their Enemies at *Ennerbury*. After this Victory *Bruce* recovered the Country of *Argyle*, and all *Galloway*, with all the Forts held by the *English* in *Scotland*, and then invaded *England*, from whence he carryed away much plunder and spoil. King *Edward*, to be revenged, provided an Army of 100000 Men, with which he marched into *Scotland*, and at *Bannochbarn*, two Miles from *Sterling*, met King *Bruce* with 30000 *Scots*. The *English* had some discouragement the day before the Battel; for they sent 800 Horse

to *Sterling*, but 500 *Scots*, commanded by *James Dowglass*, met with them, and overthrew them. The night before the Battel the *Scots* digged many pits and holes in the even ground, which was design'd for the Field where they were to fight; and in the Pits fixed sharp stakes headed with Irons, covered them over with Turves and Hurdles. This Policy was very useful to them, for the *English* Horse, ignorant of this Stratagem, fell into these Pits, where the *Scots* encountred them in a great disorder. The *English* were forced to retreat, though the *Scots* pursued the Victory furiously; the *English* had rallied, and were again going to try their fortune; but the sight of the *Scotch* Carriages left upon the Hills, with their Cattle and Servants, making a great noise, and shewing the appearance of another Army coming down to the assistance of their Fellows, discouraged, and put them to flight. 10000 were here killed, 700 Knights and Gentlemen, and many Prisoners taken: but King *Edward* escaped to *York*. After this the *Scots* subdued and plundered all the Northern Countries as far as *York*, and routed 10000 *English* in another Battel, with the loss of 3000. there slain. The King returned toward *Scotland* with another Army, but King *Bruce* forced him to retreat with the loss of all his Treasure. *Edward Bruce*, the Kings Brother, was likewise sent over into *Ireland*, and subdued almost all that Kingdom to the Crown of *Scotland*. This *Robert Bruce* enjoyed *Scotland* many years, and then bequeathed it to his Son *David*; and if he dyed without Issue, to *Robert Stuart* his Sisters Son, who was Granchild to *Alexander Stuart*, who about the year 1255. deposed *Atto* King of *Norway*, who had invaded the West part of *Scotland*.

20000 Danes, and 120 Ships. He killed 16000 in the Field, and freed his Country from the cruelty and oppression of these Northern People, and forced them to sue to the Scots for peace.

## CHAP. XLI.

*Of some of the most remarkable Persons for their Valour, of that most Honourable, and most Noble Family of the Stuarts.*

**T**His Family for Antiquity may contend with any in Europe, being derived from some of the most Ancient British Kings of this Island. And I am certain that in all Ages since, it hath been taken notice of in History: none hath been more fruitful of excellent Men for their Wisdom, Valour, and other Abilities of Body and Mind. Besides the fore-named Alexander Stuart, who, by his wife Conduct and Courage, deliver'd his Native Country from a dangerous Invasion; his Granchild Robert Stuart, who succeeded to the Crown of Scotland, after David Bruce his Uncle, and was the first of his name King of that Warlike People; became one of the most famous Princes of his time for his Victories over his English Enemies. He was no sooner promoted, but a War broke out between England and Scotland for the killing of a Friend of George Dunbar by the English at a Fair. Dunbar, to be revenged, plundered the Fair, and burnt the Town, with the slaughter of all Opposers. The Gentlemen Borderers on both sides invaded the Lands

of

of one another. At last Henry Percy, Earl of Northumberland, gathers together 7000 Soldiers, with whom he marched into Scotland as far as Dunc. The Scots in the night, instead of their Swords, made use of their Rattles, with which they commonly drive away the Deer from their Corn, to encounter with their English Enemies; and having the advantage of the Hills and Vallies to receive and increase the sound. The noise was so great, that the Earls Horse turned back and fled, and the rest of the Army fearing more danger than there was, followed after, leaving their Baggage to the Scots, who got an easie Victory without drawing a Sword. At the same time one Gordon lay in Ambush, and defeated Thomas Musgrave, Governour of Berwick, and his Troops, and took him Prisoner. The English entered Scotland again under the Lord Talbot with fifteen thousand, but in their return, only 500 Horse in the Night assaulted and overthrew them, because they imagined them to be a greater number. King Richard of England invaded Scotland with 60000 men, and a great Fleet; but King Robert, by entering and spoiling England, dispersed this great Tempest without much loss to his own Kingdom. In this Kings time the Scots took part of Ireland, and the Isle of Man, and had many notable Victories over the English: so that after he had governed his Kingdom, and defended it against all Invasions, he left it to his eldest Son John, who was perswaded by his Parliament to change his name into the fortunate name of Robert; he had two Sons, David and Robert, the first was created Duke of Rothsay; the second, Duke of Albany. David incurr'd his Fathers displeasure by his youthful pranks, and was confin'd to the keeping and in-

on of his younger Brother *Robert*, who made him a close Prisoner, and resolved to starve him to death; but a Country Maid found means to preserve his Life for a while with thin Oat Cakes, which she gave him through a Window; and a certain Nurse caused him to suck her Breasts at a distance, by a long Cane. To King *Robert* succeeded his youngest Son *James*, after a long Captivity in *England*. He deliver'd his Kingdom from many intestine Enemies. *Alexander*, Lord of the Isles, was by him subdued; and all the little Tyrants that plundred and robbed his People. He commissioned several Judges to make a Circuit about his Kingdom, and to hear the Complaints of his Subjects. He was as great a Lover of Learning as of Justice, and as careful to promote the publick good, by inviting many skilful Persons in Manufactures. His reputation was so great, that he was earnestly courted by the Embassadours of the Kings of *England* and *France*, to joyn with them in League and Affinity: but at last he was so unhappy, that a Conspiracy being made against him, he was basely murdered at *Pertb* by the Earl of *Arbol*, and his wicked Associates, who within forty days after were deservedly tortured to death. The Earl was Crowned with a burning Crown of *Iron*, his Joynts dislocated by the Strapado, the next day he was drawn through the streets of *Edinburg* upon a hurdle, and executed for High Treason.

To King *James* the I. succeeded his Son *James* the II. yet a Minor, Anno 1537. The Regency of the King and Kingdom was committed to *Alexander Levisston*. The Queen, a subtile Woman, seeing distempers of the Kingdom encrease through the imperiousness and ill government of the Chancellor

cellour *Chrichton*, resolved to get the King out of his Custody by this Invention. She obtained leave to lodge with her Son in *Edinburg* Castle: at last she found a means to convey him out of the Castle to *Leith* in her Trunk, where her Linen was used to be kept. This King, when he came to be of Age, obtained a notable Victory over the *English* at a place called *Sarc*, and killed 3000 of his Enemies, with the loss of 600 Scots. The Earl *Dougliss* was then too Potent for the King and Kingdom, and too haughty for a Subject. The King therefore weakens that powerful Family, brought them upon their knees, after many fierce Skirmishes and Battels; and such as continued in their Rebellion, he banished out of the Kingdom. At last he raised an Army to assist the Duke of *York* against King *Henry* the VI. of *England*. After this Kings overthrow, the Lords sent to King *James* to desire him to disband his Army, and not to molest the *English* Borders, threatening him, that if he did otherwise, they would meet him in the Field. He answered the Messengers, That he was resolved to take the Town and Castle of *Roxburg*, which he had besieged; and that he was not to be driven away from thence by Words. As King *James* was storming the Castle of *Roxburg*, he gave fire to one of the great Guns himself, and was suddenly struck dead. The Queen, then in the Army, desired the Lords not to be dejected by the Kings death, nor to forsake the Siege; and told them, that she would provide another King for them; her Son *James*, then about nine years old, who was brought into the Camp, and saluted King by the Army, who never left off till they had taken the Castle, and demolished it. Thus this Courageous Queen, undaunted at the unexpected



And death of her Husband, continued in the Field to hearten the Soldiers, and force the Enemy to surrender this strong Castle to the Scots.

King *James* the III. succeeding to his Father, wanted not his Courage, though he suffered himself to be too much govern'd by his passions, which brought him at last to an untimely end. To him succeeded *James* the IV. who in the year 1500 proclaimed a War against *England*, in favour of the *French*, and sent a great Fleet to their Assistance. He was so resolved, that when he was dissuaded from a Battel with the *English*, because of his small and weak number, he declared to the Earl of *Angus*, he would fight them, if they were one hundred thousand strong. The Scots, according to the example of their King, fought stoutly; and though there were 5000 of them killed, they slew as many of the *English*. But the King lost his life in this Battel of *Fluddon* Field. He was so zealous for the *Christian* Religion, that he obtained from the Pope, the stile of *Protector of the Faith*.

*James* the V. a Child, succeeds his Father under several Regents. At last the distractions of the Kingdom forced the Nobility to invite over from *France* *John Stuart*, Duke of *Albany*, 1514. to take upon him the Government of the King and Kingdom. He was a wise and moderate man, but much addicted to the *French* faction and interest. He was a Nephew of King *James* the III. by his Brother *Alexander*. It was the unhappiness of this, and several of the former Kings, to come to their Crown before they had knowledge and ability to bear them: therefore divisions and factions in the State, between great and Ambitious Men, did miserably tear, that poor Kingdom of *Scotland*,  
and

and caused many calamities to fall upon the innocent Inhabitants. When King *James* the V. came to be of Age, he visited, with a fleet, all the Islands, and punished such disorderly Rebels as regarded not his Predecessors commands. He went over into *France*, and married first *Margaret*, the *French* Kings Daughter; but she dyed suddenly. He married next with *Mary*, of the House of *Guisse*, of whom was born that excellent Queen *Mary* of *Scotland*, whose Rebellious Subjects, and over-jealous Kinswoman, brought her after much affliction, and a long imprisonment, to an undeserved Death. She was conveyed into *France*, and married to the *Dolphin*, and her mother declared Regent in *Scotland*. About this time happened great troubles all over that Kingdom, by the bringing in of the Protestant Reformation, which was opposed by the Queen Regent and her *French* Faction, with the *Roman* Clergy; but much encouraged by the People, the Gentry and Nobility; and especially by *James*, a Bastard Son of *James* the V. who leaving the command of his Cloyster, was created by his Sister Queen *Mary*, Earl of *Murray*. Queen *Elizabeth* of *England* was not wanting to the Protestant party in *Scotland*; she sent them both Men and Money, and by the assistance of the *English*, the *French* were driven out of *Scotland*.

Queen *Mary*, after the death of her Husband, the *French* King, returns, by shipping, to *Scotland*, where she found the Religion of the Country changed by an Act of Parliament, and the *Roman* Faith abolished. Though the Queen had the liberty of the *Mass* in her own Chappel, the furious Zeal of the reformed party was scandalous and unsufferable, for they offered many affronts.

fronts to the Queens Domesticks of the Roman persuasion. Therefore to strengthen her self against a contrary faction, she calls home *Mathew Stuart*, Earl of *Lenox* out of *England*, where he had lived in Exile. This Noble Man brought with him a Son, named *Henry*, commonly called the Lord *Darby*, to the Court of *Scotland*, where as soon as the Queen fixed her Eyes upon him, she chose him for her Husband, and dignified him with the Dukedom of *Rothsay*, and Earldom of *Ross*, to make him a fitter match for a Queen. He was a person of admirable and comely presence, and a zealous Roman Catholick. After he was marryed, and proclaimed King, many of the Nobility grew discontented, and fell into several parties, labouring to breed a difference between the King and Queen, which they found means to effect, after the King had caused *David Rix*, her French Secretary, to be violently carryed away from the Queens presence, and murdered, she being then big with Child. Afterwards she was brought to bed in *Edinburg Castle* of a Son, named *James*, who, after the decess of *Queen Elizabeth*, united both Kingdoms, and put an end to the quarrels of both Nations. The Queens Husband was afterwards inhumanely murdered by *Earl Bsthwel* and other Conspirators. The distressed Queen, after many hazards and troubles, flies for shelter into *England*, where, instead of a Sanctuary, she finds a Prison and Death. King *James*, though Crowned young, and governed by his Uncle *Murrey*, proved one of the most excellent Princes for Wisdom, Learning, and all other Princely Endowments that ever any Nation was blessed with. He was first govern'd by his Uncle *Murrey*, but he being shor by one *Hamilton* in the

Streets

*Streets of Lithgo*, and killed; *Mathew Lenox*, the young Kings Grandfather, was made Regent of *Scotland* during his Minority; but he being also killed at *Sterlin*, the Earls *Morton* and *Mar* were appointed to succeed. But when the King was twelve years of Age, he took upon him the Government, and was assisted by twelve Noble Men, as Councillours. Then his Kinsman *Esmeirus Stuart* the Son of *John*, the Brother of *Mathew*, late Earl of *Lenox*, came over from *France* to visit his Cousin King *James*, and was by him highly advanced, made Lord Chamberlain of *Scotland*, Captain of *Danbritton*, and Duke of *Lenox*. His Father, for his extraordinary Valour at the Battel of *Bangy* against the *English*, had the Noble Seat of *Aubigny* bestowed upon him by the French King *Charles* the VII.

King *James* met with many difficulties and snares, out of which Providence, and his own discretion led him safe to the Crown of *England*, to the great Joy and Happiness of both Kingdoms. He marryed with *Anne*, Daughter to the King of *Denmark*; and by her had two Sons. Prince *Henry*, who was the great expectation of the *English* Nation, but suddenly snatcht away by death. Prince *Charles*, and the Lady *Elizabeth* marryed to the Prince Palatine of the *Rhine*. Prince *Charles*, Successour to his Father, and Heir of three flourishing Kingdoms, after many Battels, where he shewed his undaunted Courage, as well as Piety, in his Afflictions, was by a most unnatural, most devillish and unparalell'd Rebellion murdered by his Subjects. Never any Prince was better qualified for a Crown, never any more patient in distress. Instead of the Imperial Crown of these Realms, Providence bestowed upon him

the

the Crown of Martyrdom, and his memory will ever continue precious in the remembrance of all his Loyal Subjects. He was too much a *Christian* to continue long in Peace, Governour over such a tumultuous People. This Nation hath been happy many years in excellent, wise and valiant Princes, who have protected us and our Estates from forrein and intestine Enemies. Our late King *Charles* the II. of ever blessed Memory, was drawn into the Field betimes to contend with Cruelty, Rebellion and Tyranny: when to the loss of his Patrimony, was added the loss of so good a Father, and the Banishment of his Friends, his excellent Courage was not dejected, but under so many aggravations of Sorrow, under so many pressing and grievous Afflictions as were sent to welcom him into the World, he endeavour'd to recover, by his Valour and Conduct, his Kingdoms and Crowns. In *Scotland*, when he was to struggle with a seditious and troublesome Generation, and was to encounter with a Victorious Army of Enemies; his Wisdom preserved his divided party from that ruine, into which they were falling by their needles Factions; and at the unhappy Battel of *Worcester*, King *Charles* shewed himself to be a wise and diligent Commander, and an undaunted Soldier, by the confession of his greatest Enemies. But that which this brave Prince attempted to obtain by his just Arms, Providence procured to him by a Miracle; I mean, the Restauration of the Royal Family to their Dignities and Estates, without any effusion of Blood, when there were so many Enemies both at home and abroad to oppose them.

In this short summary of the Heroes of the Royal Family, I cannot but mention our present King

King *James* the II. whose great Courage, undaunted Spirit, and Noble Mind, hath been sufficiently tryed both at home and abroad, both by Sea and Land, against Foreign Enemies in the Field, and furious and unreasonable Combitions of factious Spirits within the Kingdom. Victory and success hath always attended upon him; and may this most Excellent Prince long continue over us in all prosperity and happiness, and may his Enemies lick the dust.

---

## CHAP. XLIV.

### *Of the Conquest of France by King Henry the V. and several other Remarkable Passages in that famous War.*

**K**ing *Henry* the V. for the recovering of his Right to the Crown of *France*, which was denied to him upon the pretence of the *Salick* Law, sent over the Duke of *Exeter*, his Uncle, with several Noble Men, and 500 Horse, to *Charles* the VI. of *France*, to demand the Crown, and with it the Princess *Catherine*, the French Kings Daughter. The *Dolphin*, in contempt of King *Henry's* youthful days, sent him, in scorn, a Tunn of Tennis Balls to play with. The King was so sensible of this scornful present, that he swore, *That he would toss so many Iron Balls in France, that the strongest Rackets in that Kingdom should not be able to return them back.* It is no Wisdom to provoke the weakest Enemy, nor safe to contemn the meanest Power, for that which is wanting

wanting in Ability, may be made good by diligence and policy. King *Henry*, for the obtaining of his purpose, transported over an Army into *France*. *Harflew* was besieged, and within six Weeks taken. The Soldiers had liberty to plunder it. A sudden distemper happened in the *English* Army, which destroyed many of the stoutest Soldiers, who are as much subject to death in their Tents, as in the midst of the Enemies Swords, and the showres of shot. The King left a Garrison in *Harflew*, and resolved by land to march to *Chalice* with Two Thousand Horse, and Thirteen Thousand Archers. The *Dolphin* with above Thirty Thousand at *Roban* resolved in Council to fight the *English*. At *Agencourt* the Constable of *France* came to the *Dolphin* with Ten Thousand Horse, and some Foot. The *French*, as their manner is, boasted of the Victory before they had got it; but they presumed so much upon their numbers, that they thought to swallow up the *English*. King *Henry* had wisely provided all things for a fight. He had got a number of Stakes, strengthened with sharp Irons at each end; with them he fences in his Foot, that they might find, in case of necessity, some defence against the multitudes of the Enemies Horse. The *French* Army was divided into three Battalions, the first consisting of 16000. was lead by the Constable; the second, by the Dukes of *Alanfon* and *Barr*; the third was commanded by the Earls of *Mark* and *Damp*. The *English* Vanguard was brought up by the Duke of *York*, the main Battel, in which were the strongest Bill-men, by the King, assisted by the Duke of *Glocester*, the Earls of *Oxford* and *Suffolk*. The Rear was marshalled by the Duke of *Exeter*, the Kings Uncle. An Ambush of *English* Archers

Archers was placed within a new hedge, to receive and surprize the *French* at their first approach. They did such good service with their showres of Arrows, which fell upon the Van of the *French* Army, consisting for the most part of Horse, that they were overthrown, and helped to trample upon, and disorder their Foot. In that hurly burly the *English* Bill-men fell upon them with such fury, that they were forced to fly: but at the coming in of the *French* main Battel, the *English* retreated in order within their Stakes, and where then followed by the *French* Horse with more hast than discretion, for they found themselves so entangled, that many of the most furious lost their Lives. Here the King fought hand to hand with the Duke of *Alanfon*, and beat him down, and would have spared his Life, had not his Guard killed him before he was aware. When the two first Battalions were overthrown, the third had no stomach to go on to the charge; and though they were the greater number, they fled, and craved quarter, which was granted: but when a dreadful noise was heard from the *English* Camp, occasioned by 600 Horse that fell in to plunder the *English* behind their Backs; the King imagining that another Army was coming on to assault him, and that so many thousand Prisoners might rise up, and endanger his Army in the Rear, commanded them all to be slain, for which he ever after was heartily sorry. In this Battel fell the Constable and Admiral of *France*, the Dukes of *Alanfon*, *Brabant* and *Barre*, many Earls, 25 Barons, 3000 Knights, Esquires, and Gentlemen, and many thousand common Soldiers. Though the Enemy was fled, the King, for the publick safety, commanded his Army to stand in Array;

Array ; for the Earl of *Faulconbridge* suddenly appeared with 600 Horse, to take the *English* upon an advantage, but they were soon routed. After this, Solemn thanks was given there to God; and the Soldiers had then liberty to take the Plunder of the Field. From thence King *Henry* marched to *Chalice*, loaden with Riches and Honour. The next year, with a new Army, he landed in *Normandy*, besieged and took *Caen*, and all the chief Towns, invited by the Kings promises, yielded without resistance ; only *Rohan*, being well manned and fortified, held out so long, till Famine scal'd the Walls, and deliver'd it to the *English*. *Bedford* and the Earl of *Huntington* returned likewise with Victory over the *French* Fleet.

In the beginning of this War, the *English* had no assistance, but from their own Skill and Valour, and from the divided State of *France*, and the discontent of the *Grandeess*, who commonly find fault with one another in an unsuccessful War. But there happened an Action which mightily increased the strength of the *English*. The Duke of *Burgundy*, the *Dolphin's* Enemy, sought to be reconciled to him for the publick good. The *Dolphin*, though he professed much kindness, took his advantage, and murdered the Duke. The Earl of *Carolois*, the Dukes eldest Son, sought to be revenged on the Murderers, and therefore from thence favoured King *Henry's* Claim. A peace was concluded, by which King *Henry* was proclaimed Regent, and Heir apparent of *France*, and he married with *Catherine*, the *French* Kings Daughter. All these sudden successes of the *English* were owing to the young Duke of *Burgundy's* revenge, the *French* Kings weakness, and the *Dolphin's* unjust dealing ; for he had purchased to himself

self many Enemies by the illegal murdering of great men, chiefly the Duke of *Burgundy*. A Foreign Enemy hath a great advantage in a strange Country, when a Potent Person, or a considerable Party joins with; or assists them in their Conquest. The *Dolphin*, though he was discouraged by the *French* Kings rejection, and the defection of many Towns, he gathered his Forces, and put a period to the *English* Victories and Joys, by the gain of a Battel, wherein 2000 *English* were surprized and slain, with the Duke of *Clarence*, the Kings Brother, the Earls of *Tankerville* and *Kent*, and the Lord *Ross*, only for want of a right intelligence of the Enemies state and numbers. The Duke being perswaded by a deceitful Scout to leave behind him the strength of his Army, and engage the *French* Army only with his Horse. Too much Confidence and Valour hath been the ruine of the stoutest and best Generals of former Ages. The *Dolphin*, to be revenged upon *Burgundy*, employs Fire and Sword to destroy his Country ; but the King of *England* pursued him from one City to another, till he fell sick by the way, in marching towards *Burgundy*, which caused him to be carryed back to *Bois d'Unicermes*, where, after he had given order for the preservation of his Kingdom, and returned thanks to God for his Conquests, he departed this troublesome life ; leaving by his Queen a young *Henry* born at *Windsor*, whom he committed to the Protection of his good Brother *Humfrey* Duke of *Glocester* ; but the Regency of *France* was left to his Brother *John*, Duke of *Bedford*. After the Kings Death, *Montacute*, Earl of *Salisbury*, and the Lord *Talbot*, were the most noted Champions, and the most successful Commanders for the *English*. *Salisbury* surprized the Town

Town of *Pont-Melance*, and raised the Siege of *Cravant* in *Burgundy*, with the destruction of 8000 of the Enemy. He took several other Towns, and at the Battel of *Vernoye*, between the Regent and the Duke of *Alanson*, who was assisted by *William Stuart*, and a strong party of *Scots*; this brave Commander routed the *French* Army, kill'd 7000 *French*, 2700 *Scots*, with many of the chief Nobility; so dreadful was his name to the *French* Nation, that when *St. James* in *Benyon* was besieged by the Constable of *France* with 40000 men, about 600 *English* sallying out of the Town, and crying out, *St. George*, a *Salisbury*, put the whole *French* Army to flight, and took 14 great Guns, with much of their Baggage and Ammunition. In the prosecution of this War many Towns were lost and taken on both sides; several sharp encounters happened between the *English* and the *French* Garrisons. The *French* King was Crowned at *Rheims*, and young King *Henry* at *Paris*, where he received the Homages from the Nobility and Citizens. The *English* Affairs prospered mightily well whilst there was a good agreement between the chief Commanders, whilst they humoured the Duke of *Burgundy*, and treated the *French* with Civility and kindness; but when discord happened to be between the *English* Lords, and they suffered the the Soldiers to oppress the Natives of *France*; the Cities fell away from them apace: Yet Lord *John Clifford* took *Ponthois* when the *English* Interest began to decay. In a Snowy and Frosty Night he caused all his party to cloath themselves in White, and in that colour he scaled the Walls undiscover'd, put most part of the Inhabitants to the Sword, and plundered the Town. Yet for all the brave Exploits, and couragious endeavours

deavours of several *English* Commanders, within a few years all *France* was lost, with *Aquitain* and *Normandy*, through the division of the *English*, the cruelty of the Soldiers, the Falshood and Treachery of the Natives, and the presumption and negligence of some great Captains.

---

## CHAP. XLIII.

### *Of Alexander Duke of Parma, and his successful Stratagems.*

WHEN this excellent General came first to the Government of the *Netherlands*, the King of *Spain*, of the Seventeen Provinces, was in possession but of three of the least, but in a few years *Parma*, by his industry and skill in Arms, recovered almost all, *Holland* and *Zealand* excepted. This Prince had given the first Specimen of his Courage and Understanding in War in the Famous Battel of *Lepanto* against the *Turks*, where he adventur'd to board a great Commanders Vessel, named *Mustapha*, the Treasurer of the *Turks*, and after a bloody Fight, he took that Gally, and another that came in to assist the former, with unknown Riches in both. But when *John* of *Austria* was sent Governour into the *Netherlands*, he invited *Alexander*, the young Duke of *Parma*, into the *Low Countries*. At the Battel of *Gemblack* between *John* of *Austria* and the States, *Alexander* perceiving the Enemies Horse to march in a crooked and uneven way, gave notice of it to the General, and without expecting any return, caused some

Some *Spanish* Commanders to assault them in the Front, and upon the Flanks, which was performed with that Gallantry, that they were put to flight, and run back upon their Foot, which they broke and disorder'd, so that 10000 were there slain and taken in half an Hours time, and but nine of the *Spanish* Army were found wanting. All their Carriages and Guns were there taken, with their General, and several Noblemen. This great Victory procured the Duke of *Parma* the favour and esteem of all the *Spanish* Army. But as the chief skill of a General consists not only in knowing when, and how to overcome an Enemy; but also in understanding how to preserve his Army, and saving it from a dangerous post, or drawing it out of the unexpected Ambushes of a powerful Enemy; this was performed by the Duke of *Parma* at the Battel of *Mehlin*: for *John of Austria*, the *Spanish* General, having suffered a considerable part of his Army to fall upon the Enemies, they retreated to their great Guns, and had encompassed the *Spaniards* round, so that they had been all cut in pieces, had not *Parma* secured their Retreat, which he did, by placing behind the Hedges some Companies of Musketeers to stop the pursuing Enemy, and causing some Troops of Horse furiously to charge, whilst he gave a private sign for a Retreat, and drew away the Body of Foot, in danger to be lost, into the narrow ways, lined with his Musketeers. In the mean while orders were given to the rest of the Army to keep their Ranks, and to stand ready to shelter their Fellows at their return, for fear the Enemy, following close at the Rear, should disorder and rout the whole Army, as it hath often happened in such like cases.

When

When *John of Austria* was dead, *Alexander* succeeded him in the Government of the *Netherlands*, and in the chief command of the Army. *Maastricht* was first besieged by him, where he so cunningly enclosed in the Town with Forts and Works by Land, and two Bridges over the River *Misa*, that it was not in the power of the Prince of *Orange*, and of his Army, either to relieve the Town, or force him in his Trenches. At last, after a notable Siege, the City was taken, and miserably plundered by the Dukes Army. By his Policy and Valour he recover'd the most part of the *Netherlands*, defeated the Troops of *Casimir* the *Saxon* Prince, who, with his *German* Forces, assisted the Prince of *Orange* and the States. He compelled several great Towns to yield to him, *Tourney*, *Aldenard*, *Dunkirk*, &c. He drove the Duke of *Alanson* out of the *Netherlands*, and often beat the *French* Auxiliaries, after their unhappy endeavour to surprize *Antwerp*, and the chief Towns, which they assaulted at noon day, by the orders of the Duke of *Alanson*, who attempted to take and plunder *Antwerp* by Treachery. But *Parma's* excellent skill in War never appeared more than in the famous Siege of *Antwerp*: With ten or eleven thousand men he beleagu'd that great City full of People, defeated all the Auxiliary Forces sent to relieve the Town, and at the same time compelled Five other strong Cities to yield to him, *Gant*, *Brussels*, *Mechlin*, *Nimeguen*, and *Teneramund*. In this Siege he built a Famous and most Ingenious Bridge over the River of *Scala*. This Bridge was in part blown up and broken by Ships let down the Stream from *Antwerp* by a notable Ingenier; but such was the diligence and Courage of the Duke of *Parma*, that he caused

fed some Beams, Planks and Vessels to be laid in that Breach, and Drums and Trumpets there to sound, to blind and deceive the *Holland* Vessels that were coming up the River the next morning to relieve *Antwerp* with Provisions: so that, notwithstanding this discouragement, and the loss of his Soldiers, killed in the blowing up of the Bridge, he continued the Siege, until the Citizens were forced by Famine to yield up their City. He reduced the States of *Holland* to the necessity of imploring Queen *Elizabeth's* Aid. She sent the Earl of *Leicester* with a brave Army; but the Duke of *Parma* proceeded on in the Conquest of the *Netherlands*, and the taking of several Towns both from the *Dutch* and *English*. But no Action of this Prince deserves more the admiration of Men, than his expeditions into *France*. The first was for the relief of *Paris*, besieged by *Henry* the IV. The Duke was ordered by the King of *Spain* to march thither with his Army. *Henry* was forced to call together all his Troops, and rise from the Siege, to meet the Duke, with an intent to fight him. But when he understood that *Paris* was supplied with Provisions, he entrenched himself in such an advantageous Post, that the King did not dare to beat him from thence. He afterwards retreated back into the *Low Countries*, and in view of the *French* Army (far more numerous than his) stormed and took the Town of *Lagny*; and though the *French* followed him close at the Heels, yet he ordered his Retreat so subtilly, that they could never fight him. The next expedition was for the Relief of *Rohan*, besieged by same King *Henry* the IV. The Duke of *Parma*, with an Army of about 15000 Old Soldiers, *Spaniards* and *Walloon*s, and 8000

*French*,

*French*, under the Duke of *Mayenne*, went to *Rohan*, and obliged King *Henry* to depart with his Army. *Parma*; at the request of the Citizens, assaulted *Caudebeck*, and took it. In the mean while King *Henry* had gathered together his dispersed Forces, and finding himself as strong as his Enemies, resolved to pursue, and fight them. They were then about *Tuepôt* in the Chalky Country of *Normandy*, having the great River of *Seine* between them both. The Dukes Army was much distressed for want of Victuals, and had received some loss by the *French* Army in Skirmishes; and King *Henry* had taken great care to cut off all provisions from them. But the Duke of *Parma*, in one night, deliver'd his Army from the danger both of the Enemy and of Famine. He caused great Boats, covered over with Beams and Planks, to fall down the River from *Rohan* to his Camp; where he caused two Forts to be raised, with some Redoubts, to favour and defend his passage over the River, which in this place is half a League over. Upon these Boats he conveyed over all his Cannon and Carriages, his Bag and Baggage, with Horse and Foot; so that the next day, when the *French* Army was preparing to assault the *Spaniards* in their Tents, they saw only Prince *Ranuse Farnese* with 1500 Men, with the rest of their Canon, going over to the Dukes Army on the other side; and it was not in the Kings power to follow him for want of Boats, or a Bridge. By this means the Duke returned back with leisure into the *Low Countries*, relieved two great Cities against a powerful King; and without venturing his Army, to the great wonder of all *Europe*, performed what he had undertaken.

O

CHAP.



## CHAP. XLIII.

*How the Marquis de Monte defeated five Companies of Foot, and Seven Hundred Horse, with Seventy Lances, and Twenty Five Carabins.*

**T**His excellent Commander, by the Duke of Parma's order, marched out of *Lovain*, where he was Governour, towards *Maestricht*, to discover the Enemy, and by chance met with five Companies of Foot, and Seven Hundred Horse. At the first sight his men began to fear the inequality of the number; but the Marquis finding himself too far advanced, and so near that he could not well escape by flight, resolved, to encourage his small party to stand the encounter. For that purpose he caused his *Carabines* to march up to the top of the Hill in sight of the Enemy, and there to stand ready for a charge, whilst he divided his *Lances* into three parts, which he caused, at a signal given, to ride from three several places furiously towards the Enemy. When they saw from divers places several Troops of Horse riding up to charge them, and hearing the sound of the Trumpets, which the Marquis caused to be sounded in the Vallies, as if there were a greater Body of Men coming up to charge them, they all run away, and gave an easie Victory to the Marquis, who in half an hours time killed a great many in the pursuit, took three Colours, two hundred Horses, and and one hundred Prisoners. Thus, by the mistake

stake and deceit of the eye-sight, was this party routed; and when fear causeth Men to fly away, a small number is sufficient to continue the chase, and hinder them from rallying.

## CHAP. XLIV.

*Of Henry de Lorain, Duke of Guise, and how he defeated the great Army of Germans in France.*

**T**HE Protestant Princes of Germany being solicited by the King of *Navar*, sent about five and twenty thousand men, under the command of the Baron *de Dona* and the Duke of *Boillon* to his assistance. The Duke of *Guise*, with a flying Army of four or five thousand men, waited upon them from the borders of *Lorain*, to cut off Provisions, and at all advantages to ruine and destroy them. In their march towards the fruitful Country of *Beauvoisine*, the Germans came near *Montargis*, and the Baron with a strong party of Horse, quartered at a small Town called *Vimory*. The Duke having intelligence of the disposition of the Enemies Army, marched out of *Montargis* by night with his small party through a long Plain, and arrived at *Vimory* before day. The Duke of *Guise* having divided his Infantry into three Battalions of about a thousand men apiece, under the command of these Captains, *St. Paul Joannes*, *Chevrers*, and *Pontsenac*, and his Cavalry into four Squadrons, led by the Dukes of *Mayenne*, *de Elbeuf*, and *Aumale*. The Duke of

*Guise* led the fourth, which consisted of 300 Horse. When they were near to *Vimory*, they sent four Horsemen to discover the entry in of the Village, and found neither Scouts, nor Guards, nor Perdues, nor any Baricado to hinder the Assault of an Enemy, so secure these *Germans* lay. Therefore the Duke of *Guise* entering the great Street of the Town, which was full of Carts and Waggon's belonging to the *German* Army, soon overpowred those that first made resistance, and then setting Fire to the Houses, burnt and killed above a thousand *Germans*, and took from them a great deal of Plunder, with 1200 Horse. But when the Baron *de Dona* had rallyed his Troops to make resistance, the Duke of *Guise* fearing to be surrounded, retreated back to *Montagis* with rich Spoils and much Honour. This Loss, though it was not great, yet destroyed the whole *German* Army, by breeding a discontent between Officers and Soldiers, and causing them to distrust the capacity of their General, who from *Vimory* led them into *Beaufse*, to the Town of *Anneau*, where there was a Castle, which a certain Captain had undertaken to defend against all the *German* Army. The Duke of *Guise*, with a very small party, pursues them, and resolves to beat up their Quarters once more. And for that purpose having agreed with the Captain of the Castle to receive in by Night his Infantry, he, with all his Cavalry round about the Town, stood ready to cut in pieces those that should offer to save themselves by Flight. The Infantry at break of day sallying out of the Castle into the Town, surprized the *Germans* unprovided, kill'd about 3000 of them, took five hundred Prisoners

ners with their Bag and Baggage, and their Waggon's and Plate. The rest of the Army that quartered in the Neighbouring Villages were so discouraged, that they sent to agree with King *Henry* the 3<sup>d</sup>. to suffer them to return home into their own Country. So that of this great Army scarce 4000 were left alive; for in their return they were destroyed by the Country People.

---

## CHAP. XLV.

### *Of Gustavus Adolphus King of Swedenland, and his brave Actions in Germany and Poland.*

THIS Prince has been successful in all his Wars, first against the *Muscovite* and *Polander*; for the King of *Poland* claimed the Crown of *Swedes* as his natural Inheritance. The War continued very fierce many years, but the *Swedes* for the most part had the Victory, and took several Towns from the *Poles*. *Newburg* and *Straisburg* were taken by a new Invention of a certain Engineer, named *Elias Tripus*, who shewed the King how to shoot great Shot with Leathern Guns, to batter the Enemies Walls. During this War between the two Kinsmen, the Kings of *Sweden* and *Poland*, the Emperor of *Germany* gave Assistance to the *Poles*, and made War against the *Swedes*, from whom he took divers Towns. Therefore as soon as the peace was concluded with the *Polander*, the *Swedish* King proclaims a War, by his Manifesto, against *Czar*.

sur, who, in Favour of the Roman Bishops, had abridged the *Protestant Liberties* all over *Germany*, taken from the Prince *Palatine* his ancient Inheritance, plundered the *Lutheran Cities*, invaded the Countries of *Saxony*, and other reformed Territories, and joining with the *Spaniard*, resolved to promote and advance the *Papish* perswasion with Fire and Sword. The King of *Sweden*, a rigid *Lutheran*, as he found himself engaged by many Obligations in this War against *Germany*, he met with great Assistance and Encouragements from divers Princes and Cities, who had been harassed and plundered upon the account of Religion. In the year 1630. he entred the Isle of *Rugia*. *Stetin*, the chief City of *Pomerania*, yielded to the *Swedes*, so did the Castles of *Wolgast* and *Damgart*, and the Towns of *Ribbenitz*, *Winshem*, *Colberg*, *Griffenhage*, and all *Pomerania*. *Gustavus* proceeded on in his Conquests, and restored several exiled Princes to their Patrimonies in *Saxony*. The Elector himself being grievously impoverished by the Imperial Army, entreated Assistance from the King, who at *Lipsick* joins with the Duke against Count *Tilly*. A furious Battel was here fought. The King had the leading of the Right Wing, the Duke of *Saxony* governed the Left. At the first encounter the Imperialists had the Advantage of the Sun and Wind, but the King of *Sweden* cunningly wheel'd about, and got that benefit from them, and to strengthen his Troops of Horse, he caused some Ranks of Musketeers to be mingled amongst them, which did notable service in that Station. The new raised Forces of *Saxony* gave ground, but they were soon relieved by General *Horns* Foot, who were placed in Ambush in a little Wood.

Wood. The Fight was obstinate and bloody; fifteen thousand lay dead upon the place; but the Victory inclined to the *Swedes* and *Saxons*, who, the next day, prepar'd again to Fight; but when they understood that the Imperialists were fled, and had left behind them their Ordinance, Bag and Baggage, they took the plunder of the Field. This great Victory obtained at *Podelwitz*, near *Lipsick*, caused many Towns of *Franconia* to yield to the Conqueror. Another Battel was fought at *Rottenburg*, but the Imperialists were worsted. Then did the King take all the Towns between the *Baltick Sea* and *Mentz* in one year. The distressed Prince *Palatine* of the *Rhine* embraceth this favourable opportunity to recover his forfeited Estate, and begs the Assistance of *Gustavus*, who employs all his Forces to relieve him, and by this means he got possession again of his Countries, which could never be obtained by all the Treaties, Leagues, and Correspondencies of his Friends in *Europe*. *Francfort*, *Ausburg*, *Monachium*, and many of the chief Cities of *Germany* were surrendered to the King, who met with no resistance, till *Wallenstein* Duke of *Fridland*, and the Duke of *Bavaria* with a great Army, encamped near the *Swedes* about *Noremburg*. The Kings Army was 50000 strong, the Imperialists more; but the *Swedes* wanted Provisions, which they took by intercepting such Convoys as were going to the Emperours Army, and by surprizing *Friestad*, a Magazine. The King sends *Tupatelius*, a *Swedish* Collonel, with a party of Dragoons in the Night. They clapt a Petard to the Gates, and entred the Town, took the Corn and the Cattle that were there; and because the Enemies Army lay not far off, the King sent a strong party

to relieve his Men, placing an Ambush for the Imperialists, who failed not to fall into it, to their great loss. Both Armies thundred one against another many days with frequent Skirmishes, but the want of Provisions forced them to part after a hot Encounter. The Imperialists marched towards Saxony, to be revenged on that Duke. With the Dread and Terror of Fire and Sword they opened the Gates of many strong Towns, till the King, hasting to the Assistance of that miserable Country, at the fatal Town of *Lutzen*, the 6th. of November, 1632. he meets with the Imperial Army, and resolves to fight them. As soon as the Sun was up, he implored the Assistance of the Almighty, and set his Army in order; he himself led the Right Wing, the Duke *Bernard of Saxon Weymar* had the Left. The King was desired to put on his Armour, but he refused to incumber himself with too great a Weight. In the heat of the Battle, a certain person, belonging to the Regiment of *Piccolomini*, sees him at a distance; he rid furiously up to him, and as he was turning about his Horse, he shot him with a Brace of Bullets in the Back, to the great grief of all his Army, but not to their Discouragement; for when they heard of his Death, they fell so resolutely on, that they beat off the Imperialists, and recovered the Royal Body. In the Left Wing Duke *Bernard* had put the Enemy to a Retreat, but at that Instant *Papenheim*, an Imperial General, came into the Field, rallied the disordered Troops, and with his own Forces endeavoured to snatch the Victory from the Swedes, but he found them ready to receive him. The Day was too short for that Fight, it continued some part of the night;

night; but *Papenheim* ended there his days in the Bed of Honour, leaving the Swedes to rejoice for a dear bought Victory, with the loss of an excellent King, who dyed in the 38th. year of his Age. When he saw how fond and confident his People were in him, he desired them not to trust in him, whose Breath was in his Nostrils, but in the Lord *Jesus*, who had promised to be with his Church till the end of the World. Though the Swedes here lost their King, they prosecuted the War under the command of Duke *Bernard*, *Kniphuis* and *Horn*, being assisted by the Dukes of Saxony, Brandenburg, the Lantgrave of Hesse, the Duke of Lunenburg.

---

## CHAP. XLVI.

### *How Prince Maurice got into his Power the Town of Grolle in Gelderland.*

**G**rolle was a well fortified Town, possessed by the Spaniard: Prince *Maurice* had laid Siege to it, but was forced to depart without his purpose. He studied therefore how to obtain by subtilty what he could not get by force. Sometime after he calls together his Troops, and declares, that his design was to sit before *Guelders*, a Town not far distant from *Grolle*. As soon as the Spaniards understood it, they furnished *Guelders* with all manner of provisions and Ammunition for its defence, and took out of other Towns Soldiers and all necessaries to supply that, but chiefly out of the Town of

*Grolle.* The Prince having notice how naked they had left it, suddenly surrounded it the second time, and by reason of its want of the Ammunitions and Provisions sent to furnish *Guel-ders*, he quickly became Master of it. Such pretences are very useful to deceive an Enemy, and to surprize him unawares and unfurnished for a defence. This policy was often practised by the Renowned Duke of *Parma* in the taking of several Towns in the *Netherlands*. If therefore a Commander be free to discover his design upon any place, the Enemy may understand thereby, that this is only to deceive him, and that the real intent is kept secret: for Wise Generals will not suffer their inferiour Soldiers, and sometimes their greatest Officers, to know their purposes.

## CHAP. XLVII.

*How Scanderbeg with a Handful of Horse and Foot, overcame the Turks numerous Forces of Cavalry and Infantry.*

*Scanderbeg*, that Renowned General, and Champion of the *Christian Faith*, in a certain Battle, in which he was forced to engage and fight with the *Turkish Army*, which exceeded him much in number of men, made use of this policy. He drew up his Army in such Streights and places, as that he could not easily be surrounded. And to strengthen his Horse against the fury of the

the *Turkish*, he lined them with some of his best Foot, commanding them at the first onset to charge in the distances between the Horse, which was performed with that Gallantry and Courage, that the *Turkish Horse* having both Foot and Horse to encounter with at once, gave back, and were forced to retire in disorder upon their Foot; so that without any great Loss, he routed and defeated that vast Army with a small number of Men.

## CHAP. XLVIII.

*How the Duke d'Alve was wont to strengthen his Army in a Camp against the sudden Attempts of the Prince of Oranges Horse.*

THE Duke *d'Alve* was a subtile Commander of his days, and so renowned a General, that his Prince, *Philip the 2d.* pitcht upon him to lead his Army to conquer the Kingdom of *Portugal*, though he was then in disgrace, and banished the *Spanish Court*. When the Prince of *Orange* entred *Brabant* with a brave Army, well provided with *German Horse*, this Duke *d'Alve* had in his Army almost all Foot: therefore to prevent any surprize, *d'Alve* used to fortifie himself round with Waggon and Carts chained together, and beyond them to cast up a Trench round his Army. He caused also his Carts to be lined with Musketeers; so that the Prince was never able to force him to a Fight. And when all his Forage and Provisions were spent, he was driven

driven by that means, to the necessity of departing out of the Country into *Germany* again.

## CHAP. XLIX.

*Of certain times convenient to fight an Enemy, and other times, wherein it is Wisdom to refuse a Battel.*

**I**F an Armies Reputation depends wholly upon a speedy success, as in many cases. If the Enemy be gathering together greater Forces, and expects a speedy supply of Horse or Foot: If the Country be so at his devotion, that the longer he delays, the stronger he grows; or if Victuals or Money begin to fail, then a General should seek all fit opportunities for a speedy Encounter, while the Enemy is not too strong, and his own party in a condition and resolution to give Battel. But if a General hath more Forces coming into him, or if he knows, that by delaying he may shorten or cut off his Enemies Provisions; or if Sickness and Diseases do daily lessen the number of his Enemies, then, by delaying, he may do as much service, as by venturing a Battel. At the Isle of *Rhee*, the *French* Army would never offer to fight with the *English*, till they perceived them in a confusion, by reason of their orders to Embark. But they always followed them close at the Heels, till this opportunity was offered to them, and then with all their Forces of Horse and Foot, they fell suddenly upon the *English*, and cut off a great many. Likewise in the War between *Don John* of *Austria*

*Austria* and the Estates of the *Netherlands*; he endeavour'd to fight the Army commanded by *Count Bissure*, because he understood that *Duke Chismare* with 5000 Horse, and 6000 Foot, with other Forces, were coming into the Earls Camp within a few days. But the Earl would by no means suffer his Men to venture out of their Trenches.

## CHAP. L.

*How Lewis King of France stopt the Assistance which the Dukes of Burgundy and Britany, were going to send to the Duke of Normandy.*

**T**HE *French* King understanding that these three Dukes had made a League Offensive and Defensive against him, their common Enemy, and having an intent to assault and fight them single. When he led his Army into *Normandy*, he feigned Letters from that Duke to the Duke of *Burgundy*, signifying, that he was loath to run the hazard of a War, that he had accepted of the Kings offers, and concluded an agreement with him for 60000 Franks, and therefore he desired him to forbear sending of his Forces to his Assistance, as had been formerly promised. These Letters the King caused to be sent by an Herald to the Dukes of *Burgundy* and *Brittany*, who, though they suspected them to be false, yet because they received a confirmation from the Contents from other hands (but by the procurement

ment of the King) they caused their Armies to be speedily disbanded. By this means the King obtained by policy what otherwise he could not well get by Force, without the hazard of his Army; for he having thus weakened his Enemies, made with them what agreement he thought convenient, and they were forced to yield to his Terms of peace.

## CHAP. LI.

*A Policy used by a French General to destroy the Neapolitan Army strongly Encamped.*

WHEN there was a dispute between *Ferand* King of Naples, and *Charles*, King of France, about the Crown of that Kingdom; *Ferand* understanding that the French Army was too potent for him to encounter with, only with his faint-hearted Neapolitans, resolved to entrench himself between certain Hills. The French General finding him in that advantageous Post, that he did not dare to meddle with him, divided his Army secretly in the night, and sent a strong Party round about to assault King *Ferand* behind, whilst he in the Interim with small Parties skirmished and kept them in continual play. At last, when the party of Men, which were to surround the Neapolitan Army, and to fall upon their Backs, were come to the appointed place; the French assaulted the Enemy behind and before, entered their Trenches, and routed them.

*Xerxes*

*Xerxes* in the same manner recovered the Streets of *Thermopylae* in Greece, defended by a handful of *Lacedemonians*, under *Leonidas* their Captain.

## CHAP. LII.

*How Prince Maurice took the Town of Gertrudenberg.*

WHEN the Prince of Orange besieged *Gertrudenberg* by Sea and Land, he understood by a Prisoner taken from the Enemy, that once every day the Governour, with the chief Magistrates, were wont to go up privately to take a view of the *Hollanders* Trenches, and of the Country round about, that they might see for an opportunity to fall upon them; immediately he took advantage of this Information, and secretly ordered a Gentleman of his Army to run away to the Town, under pretence, that he had murdered a Man, and therefore fled to save his Life. The Gentleman, according to appointment, discover'd to the Princes Army, by playing upon a Pipe, when the Governour was in the Steeple. The great Guns being then ready, and waiting for the purpose, were all immediately discharged at one time, and battered down the Steeple, killed the Governour with the Magistrates, which as soon as the Prince suspected, he caused a sudden assault to be made, and carried the Town, for want of a Governour and Orders to defend it. For such a Consternation that must needs happen at the unexpected destruction of a Chieftain, either in an Army, or in a Garrison,

tion, the Soldiers Hearts must needs be broken, and before orders can be given to supply his place by another, the Enemy hath a great advantage upon the party that he commands.

## CHAP. LIII.

*How the States of Holland took the Town of Breda by surprize.*

They hired a certain Master of a Boat, who was wont to carry into the City Provisions of Bread and Beer, and other necessaries, for maintenance of the Garrison. In this Boat they stored a Company of Stout and Valiant Gentlemen, and covered them over with Turves and other things. The Boatman, according to his custom, brings strong Liquors upon the Guard, makes them all drink plentifully, till they were drunk, whilst they were in that Condition, he passeth the Guard, and enters into the Town with his Company of Men, who immediately gave notice to their Friends without, by casting up a Ball of Wild-fire, to fall on. A Gate was broken open for them; then did they disperse themselves about the Town, killed all that resisted, and mastered the Guard. Such surprizes have been made with Carts full of Corn, Hay, &c. wherein have been hid Soldiers; and sometimes a Cart hath been purposely broken, and out of order at the Gate of a Town, to hinder the shutting of it, and a party of the Enemy hath then set upon, and entred the Town.

CHAP.

## CHAP. LIV.

*How the Garrison of the Skonse at Zutphen was surprized.*

The Spaniards, to strengthen the more the City of Zutphen in Gelderland, had built a very strong Skonse in such a place, as hindered any Enemy from making their approaches to besiege or annoy the Town; for it was erected on the Banks of the River *Welle*. When therefore Prince Maurice had a design upon that place, he procured a dozen young Gentlemen of a Feminine Countenance, to be apparelled as Country Maids, and to carry thither Butter, Eggs, Poultry, and other such Country Commodities to be sold to the Garrison Soldiers. They coming to the Walls to buy these Provisions, found the Disguised Virgins very tractable, and judging them fit for their Lust, they received them into the Fort, and offered them drink, to make them more pliable for their purpose. As the Soldiers were busie in their Courtship, these young and stout Soldiers drew from under their Petticoats a long Knife, made for the purpose, and stabbed the Soldiers who sat next to them; then rising together with such Arms as they seized next to them they encountered with the rest of the Guard, and cut them all off, delivering the strong Port to their Companions, who waited near at hand to give them their ready Assistance. The taking of this Skonse so discouraged the Garrison of the Town, that they yielded in few days after to the States of Holland. Such Disguises



guises have often proved successful, when the business and design hath been managed with care and discretion, wariness and Courage. Another Town in the Low-Countries was taken by a party of Soldiers appalled as Country Maids, and by them the Guard was suddenly overpowered, and a Gate seized to let in the Enemy at hand: but the least disappointment spoils all the Design, and destroys the bold Adventurers, who must expect no pardon or Quarter after such a dangerous Hipocrisie.

## CHAP. LV.

*How Spinola's Army was like to be routed when they first sat down before the Walls of Bergen-op-Zone.*

**T**HE Governour of the City, a politick Commander, resolved to sally out upon the Spaniards at their first coming to besiege the Town; and to terrifie them the more, he increased the appearance of his Army with a shew of Armed Troops, besides those that he had real. His Horse and Foot were to attack the Enemy out of one Gate, and out of Another he caused all the Weak Jades of the Town, being mounted by Boys and useless Fellows, to march leisurely out, and shew the appearance of other Forces. These were to discover themselves at a distance, after the first or second Charge, when the Enemy was weary. The Spaniards had beaten back the Defendants, but the unexpected sight of these deceitful Forces so troubled them, that they suddenly left the

Chase

Chase, and retired behind their Trenches in some disorder; and had the States Soldiers been provided with Ammunition and Bullets, to have given at that instant another Charge, Spinola's Army had been then totally routed, and the City freed from a troublesome Siege.

## CAAP. LVI.

*How an Army hath been discouraged in the midst of a Fight.*

**A**T Muscledborough Field, when both Armies were fiercely engaged, there was cunningly a rumour spread amongst the Enemies, that their General was slain in the other Wing, and part of their Forces cut off and routed, which Report so terrified them, that they immediately gave Ground, and began to run. This Policy hath been often used, when it was known that the General was not present. And sometimes after the first Charge, an Army hath cryed out, *Look how they run in the Rear.* Such Words, and false Reports have disordered and defeated the best and most resolute Armies: for the least fear discourages Soldiers in such a critical time, and disables them from pursuing the Victory. So that as it hath always been the practice of well advised Generals, by sudden Attempts, Stratagems, Rumours, and other Arts, to terrifie their Enemies, it hath been the endeavour of wise Commanders to prevent fear from discouraging their Forces, and to secure their minds against all sudden Accidents, which they could foresee by their

ad-

advice and command, and by the steadiness of their own Resolutions and wise Orders.

## CHAP. LVII.

*How the States of Holland got the Possession of a piece of Ground which they knew was fit for them to build a Fort, to distress the Enemies Towns, and stop the passage of two great Rivers.*

There is between the *Wale* and the *Leck* two great Rivers, a piece of ground advancing into the Sea. The *Hollanders* perceiving that it might be beneficial to them and their designs against the *Spaniards*, if they could get it, resolved by policy to gain possession of it. Round about were the Enemies Castles and Garrisons, which would infallibly oppose any such motion, if they came to understand it. Therefore to conceal their intent from them, they dealt with a Country Fellow named *Skinks*, to hire that piece of ground for some years to feed his Colts; and to secure them the better, they ordered him to raise a Wall, and dig a deep Ditch from one River to the other, which was about 400 Rod, being the only passage by Land to that place. When this was finished, the *Hollanders* came by night, sailing up the River, and landed such Forces as were able to defend the place, until they had builded a strong Fort or *Skonse* to secure it from the *Spaniards*, who finding themselves outwitted, and

and perceiving the Importance of the place, they labour'd to re-take it again. This was that Fort named *Skinks Skonse*, so famous for a long Siege in the late *Holland War*.

## CHAP. LVIII.

*How the Town of Manheim was surpriz'd by Duke Bernard of Saxonweymar.*

This Town is situate upon the great River of *Rhine*, and one of the strongest of the *Pallatinate*. Duke *Bernard* desired earnestly to have it in his possession, but was loath to venture his Reputation with his Army in besieging it, knowing the Strength of the Town and the Resolution of the Garrison; he therefore endeavoured to get it by policy. He took with him five hundred men in the night, and so ordered his march, that he came before the Gates of the Town in the morning, an hour or two before day, and sent in word to the Governour, that he was a Commander of a neighbouring Garrison of their side, (naming his name) and that, having adventur'd out with a party upon some important design, he was overpowred, and beaten in by a stronger party of *Swedes*, who followed him, and therefore forced to seek a Refuge within the Walls of *Manheim*, from the *Swedish* Violence, desiring him earnestly to cause his Gates to be opened, to let him and his Soldiers in with speed, because the *Swedes* were then at hand, ready to fall upon, and cut off his Rear. *Maravelli*, the Governour, believed all this to be true, and com-

commanded the Gates to be opened, and a passage to enter into the Town. As soon as the Duke was within, he cut off the Main Guard with three hundred Soldiers, took the Governour Prisoner, and the chief Officers, and won the Town, which could not have been otherwise taken without a chargeable and long Siege.

---

## CHAP. LIX.

### *Tamerlan's Policy to oblige the Towns to yield to him with speed.*

**I**T was his common custom, as soon as he had pitched his Tents, to cause a white Banner to be displayed on the top of his Pavillion, and there to remain two or three days. If the Town or City did yield whilst that was up, the Inhabitants were to expect good Quarter, and the preservation of their Lives and Estates without the least Injury; but if they resisted obstinately his offers of Grace, and would try his Strength, he did then put up a Red Banner, which did threaten them with Death, and the loss of many Lives. After that, if they did not open to him their Gates, he commanded his Black Banner to be hung out; after which he would never admit of any parley, nor conditions of a surrender, but was wont to command that Town, with all its Inhabitants, to be destroyed with Fire and Sword. This custom of his struck such a Terror into the minds of all his Enemies, that after one or two Towns had experienced this Severity, none had the confidence to withstand him, but readily yielded at his first Summons. CHAP.

## CHAP. LX.

### *How the Governour of Croizon obliged his Soldiers to defend themselves and their Fort, when they were ready to yield.*

**T**His Fort was hardly besieged by General Norrice, and several Breaches being made in the Walls, the Soldiers within began to talk of a surrender. The Governour, a very stout and ingenious Man, to prevent the dishonour of a base and cowardly yielding, caused a Post to be set in every breach made by the Enemies Canon, and to it chained all such persons as were willing to yield, or had behaved themselves cowardly, but with their Weapons in their hands, that they might, if they pleased, defend themselves and their Castle. By this Policy he forced all the rest to stand stoutly to their Arms, and saved both himself and Fort from the Enemies Power.

---

## CHAP. LXI.

### *How the Lord Willoughby prevented the Siege of Bergen-op-Zone, whereof he was Governour, when the Duke of Parma began to besiege it.*

**A**fter the loss of the Spanish Fleet in 1588. the Duke of Parma, who was ready with a numerous Army for the Invasion of England, but

but being hindred from that design by the unexpected ruine of the *Invincible Armado*, he employed all his Forces against the *Towns* of the *Netherlands*. This of *Bergen* was one of the first that he endeavour'd to win. As he was considering of the method to be used, because the Town was fortified both by Art and Nature, and was guarded by a strong Castle, which was first to be mastered before the City could be taken, secret Letters were brought to him, to give him to understand, that a certain *Spaniard*, kept a Prisoner in the City, had contracted Friendship with two *English* Men, a Captain and an Ensign, and perswaded them, for a Sum of Money, to betray the Castle and City to the *Spaniards*. They, according to their Duty, discovered the whole plot to the Lord *Willoughby*, who designing to make advantage of this business for the destruction of the *Spanish* Army, ordered them to proceed on, and promise the accomplishment of the Treason, which was to be effected in this manner; they were to perswade, for a sum of Money, some of the chief Captains to open the Gates at night for them, and a party of *Spanish* Soldiers, who should secure the strongest and most considerable part of the Town. The *Spaniards* being come according to appointment, one of the Officers went out to them, and offered himself to be bound hand and foot for their greater assurance. At his approach before the Gates, they were instantly opened, and when so many were entered that the Guards could easily Master, the Lord *Willoughby* led down the Port-Cullisses, and gave such as were hastning in, such a Volley of small and great Shot, that several hundreds were killed of the *Spaniards*. The Treache-

Treacherous Officer escaped in the hurly burly, and saved himself from such as guarded him; for they were more sollicitous how to save thir own lives, than to destroy his. At the return of the *Spanish* Army, which was come to take the Town, the Sea being high, and the Air very dark, there were a great many, that for want of knowing the right way, fell into the Water, and were found drowned the next morning. There were so many killed of the *Dukes* Army, that he was forced the next day to raise his Siege, and depart for that time.

---

## CHAP. LXII.

### *How Ferand King of Naples won a City and Castle from the French.*

**F**erand understanding that the King of France had fought a great Battel with the *Venetians* and *Millanoys* near *Fernon*, considered with himself how he might make an advantage of the Kings absence, and hazard for the re-taking of his lost Kingdom. He had some Troops on foot ready at command, with them he marches to the City of *Naples*, at such a time as the Issue of the Fight could not well be known, and sent his Summons to the Governour of the Castle, to deliver it to him, together with this false news, That there had been a Battel fought at *Fernon*, wherein their King was killed, and the *French* utterly routed. The credulous Governour believing the Messenger, because he knew that there had been a Fight, but never had any certain Intelligence

gence before, and fearing lest he should anger the King, and make him less willing to grant Honourable Conditions to him and his party, if he should obstinately hold out, and oblige him by Compulsion, he yielded up his Castle and City into the Kings power, which occasioned the loss of the whole Realm from the *French*.

---

## CHAP. LXIII.

*How Mahomet Bassa concealed the Death of Soliman, at the Siege of Sigeth in Hungary, from his Army, near Two Months, until his Successor was come into the Camp, and the Town taken.*

**W**Hen Soliman the Magnificent was dead before Sigeth in Hungary, the great Bassa caused him to be put in a Horse-Litter, as if he had been only troubled with the Gout, and obliged the Physicians to go to and fro with their Physick, as if they had him in cure, to hide his Death from the mutinous *Janizaries*, who would have taken advantage of the Interregnum to have plundered the *Christians* and *Jews*, and perhaps have broken up the Siege. Yet he could not conceal this death long, but they had a Jealousie that the Bassa dealt not fairly with them; therefore to satisfy them, he promised the next day that they should see their Emperor himself alive; for that purpose he clothed the Corps in its Imperial Robes, and placed it in a Chair of State at the end of a long Gal-

lery, with a little Boy behind him, who was to move secretly the Emperours hand, and to lift it up to his Head, as if he had therewith stroakt his Beard, as it seems was his usual custom. The Soldiers, seeing this at a distance off, imagined him to be yet alive, and departed very well satisfied for that time. Thus the subtle Bassa concealed his death from his Army and Guards about Forty days more.

---

## CHAP. LXIV.

*How the Duke of Bourbon made his dismayed Troops stand another Charge.*

**A**T the Famous Battel of Agincourt, where our *English* got so much Honour of the *French* Nation, Lewis of Bourbon seeing his Left Wing routed, and resolved to try the hazard of another Charge, rallied some of his Troops that were broken, and entreated them to follow him, for he declared, that the *English* were miserably shattered, and would never abide one Charge more, and that undoubtedly they would run away, if they would but face them once more. At that instant he had appointed a Soldier to run to him in hast before these Troops, and to assure them; that the *English* were yielding apace, and crying for Quarter; and that King Henry was ready to fly away, desiring them to give their Assistance. This Policy obliged the *French* to endure another Charge; but King Henry having then taken twice as many Prisoners as were men in his Army, commanded them to be

killed upon a rumour, that the *French* had rallied again, taken the Kings Tents, and were recruited with fresh Supplies, so that being strengthened with a new Army, they were ready to fall upon him again. This obliged the King, for the safety of himself and Army, to command the Prisoners to be slain, contrary to the Law of Arms, after that he had granted and promised to them good Quarter.

## CHAP. LXV.

*How the Scots surprized the Town of Fast Castle from the English.*

**I**N the days of *Edward* the Sixth, one of his Generals took several Towns from the King of *Scots*; amongst the rest, he forced *Fast Castle* to yield to the *English*. A Governour was appointed to command there in Chief, and for the supplying of the Town with Provisions convenient for the Garrison, he ordered the Neighbouring Villages and Country Farmers to bring in Contribution Corn: When the *Scots* heard of it, they resolved to take hold on this opportunity, and to send Soldiers in the Garb of *Scotch* Peasants, with private Arms about them, the appointed time, with Sacks of Corn upon their Horses. At the Gate they alighted, and carried into the Town their Corn upon their backs, and fell upon the Guard, which suspected no such attempt, and cut them off, taking possession of the Gate, which they secured until more Forces came to their Assistance, which took the

the Town, and mastered the *English* there in Garrison.

## CHAP. LXVI.

*How the Island of Sarke, a strong place near Guernezey, was taken from the French.*

**T**HIS Island is situated near *Guernezey*, having on all sides round high and steep Rocks to defend it, and its Inhabitants from all sudden Invasions of a Foreign Enemy, and but one narrow passage that leads up to the Island, which few may defend against the greatest Forces. The Island is of that Compass and Fruitfulness, that several hundreds may subsist, and be maintained there, without any Provision from elsewhere. The *French* were once possessed of this impregnable Island, which lies very convenient for Piracy in the Road of all the *Northern* Trade. It was therefore thought convenient to take it out of their hands. A Gentleman of the *Netherlands* undertook to surprize it, and performed his Enterprize in this manner; He Anchored in the Harbour with a small Ship, and sent a Messenger to the Islanders, to tell them, That his Merchant, a very Wealthy Man, was lately dead a shipboard, and desired to be buried in a Coffin in Hallowed Ground, and that he entreated them that they might have the liberty to bring him ashore, and lay him according to his Will. The Islanders granted the Request, upon condition they should all come without Arms. The Seamen accordingly

ly landed, but instead of a Dead Corps, they filled the Coffin with Arms, and brought it up into the Church-yard, whilst many of the Islanders went aboard to buy some Commodities, but they were all secured. When the Coffin was at the place appointed, they, who carryed it, laid it down, opened it, and took their Weapons, slew the Guards, and mastered the rest of the Islanders. By this means this little, but strong Island, was taken from the Enemy.

---

## CHAP: LXVII.

### *How Count Peter Navareffe raised the Siege of a Town where he was besieged.*

**T**His subtle Warriour was besieged in a Town, where the Enemy had made a considerable breach, and was ready to storm the Walls: to prevent the approaching danger, he caused a countermure to be made, with other Works, and undermined the breach, where he placed several Firkins of Gunpowder, stopping them up with Stones and Timber. At the Time of the Assault he was ready with all his Garrison, to receive the Enemy, but suffered a considerable number to enter in, as many as he was well able to master, then he gave Fire to the Train, blew up the Mine about the Ears of them that were hastening into the Breach, and so discouraged and disordered the rest of the Army, that they gave back, when they saw the Arms, the Legs, the Heads, and other Limbs of their Fellows fly, and fall round about them. In this disorder he

he sallied out upon them with part of his Forces, and with another part he cut in pieces them that were already got within the Walls. By this means the whole Army was routed, and forced to raise the Siege with great loss. This same policy was practised at *Montalban* in *France*, when it was besieged by *Lewis* the 13th. One thing remarkable happened there, that a Regiment of Women, led by a stout Virago, with long Knives made for the purpose, sallied out at the time of the blowing up the Mine, and fell so nimbly upon the dismayed Soldiers, and such as had bin knock'd down with the Stones and Timber, whilst the Men were otherwise busily employed in fighting with the disorder'd Army, that the Siege was thereby raised, and the Kings Forces routed.

---

## CHAP: LXVIII.

### *How the Prince of Orange relieved a Town besieged by the Spaniards.*

**A** Town of the *Low Countries* being besieged by the *Spaniards*, who had so well fortified themselves, that the Prince of *Orange* thought it not safe to make any attempt upon their Works, and the besieged being in great want of Provisions, he contrives a way how to drown'd all the Country round, by digging through the Banks that kept off the Sea and the neighbouring Rivers from overflowing the Land. As soon as the Water found a Passage, it broke into the *Spanish* Camp, overflowed all their Works, and forced them

them to retire upon the higher ground, and give liberty to the Princes Boats to carry into the Town what Relief they thought needful; by this means the Siege was raised, and the *Spaniards* forced to depart with great Loss.

## CHAP. LXIX.

*How a Spanish Army, consisting of almost all Foot, routed French Forces both of Horse and Foot.*

**A**T *Lyignolu* a Battel was fought between the *Spaniards* and the *French*. The *Spanish* General considering his weakness in Horse, and the *French* numbers and strength, resolved to fight them in such ground, that they could not well make use of their numerous Cavalry. He drew up his Army amongst the Vines and broken ground, where the Horse could not well ride up and down. And having a stout Infantry, he charged the *French* Forces so bravely, that they retreated and fled. In such like cases others have fixed Stakes, sharpned at both ends, in the ground; others have digged holes, covered over with Turves; others have encompassed in their Foot with *Craw-Foot*, a *Swedish* Invention, good to stop the Cavalry; for there is always a sharp Iron that stands above ground about three Inches, which way soever you fling it: Others have marched with a Wall of Pikes round their Body, and a party of Foot in the middle, to line and secure them against the fury of the Shot of the Cavalry. Many other Inventions there are

are to be used to defend the Foot against the Horse; so that many times a small party of Foot, by Art, have routed a considerable Body of Horse.

## CHAP. LXX.

*How the Lord Poynings took at Samerdubois, in France, a Castle, which was thought to be impregnable.*

**T**HE Lord *Poynings*, at his first coming before the Castle, summons it, but finding it very strongly situated upon a Hill, that was encompassed round with deep Marish Ground, and that the Governour and Garrison had such confidence in its inaccessible Situation, that they would not hearken to a Surrender. He caused a great Cannon to be made of Wood, and drew it over the wet ground with many Horses, as if it had been of Metal, and of a great Weight, so near the Castle, that it must needs do execution, if had been as they lookt upon it to be. Then again the Lord *Poynings*, when his Battery was made, sent another Summons to the Governour; with this Threatning, That if he suffered the Canon to be discharged, they should all be put to the Sword; but if he would yet hearken to a Composition, he might have fair and Honourable Terms granted. The Captain being deceived by this Policy, yielded up his strong hold upon Articles, and departed out, when it was not in the Power of the Lord *Poynings* to have forced him.



## CHAP. LXXI.

*How Monsieur Lawtreck, in the Neapolitan War, forced all his Auxiliary Troops, which were of other Nations, to fight valiantly.*

**I**N the Neapolitan War, Lawtreck was General of the French Army, unto whose assistance came several other People of Italy, who were in League with their King. Lawtreck, to oblige them all to be valiant, separates them, and draws them all up in distinct Battalions in the Fight, and when the two Armies were engaged, he rode about to those whom he saw most backward, telling them, that such and such Battalions, had already got the Victory; they therefore, out of emulation, were forced to fight; by this means he put the Enemy to Flight.

## CHAP. LXXII.

*How a Scottish King obliged his discomfited Army to fight against the Picts.*

**T**HE Annals of Scotland make mention of a certain King of Scots, who having been often beaten, and lost many Battels against the Picts, saw that his people were altogether discouraged, and unwilling to try again the hazard of another Fight; and that he could not, by any persuasion, oblige them to it, until he had made use of this

Im.

Imposture; He apparell'd certain of his Men in Scales and Seals Skins, which shine very bright in the Dark, and put into their hands Truncheons of rotten Ash Wood, causing them in that Garb to awaken his Chief Officers at midnight, and to tell them, That they were Messengers sent from Heaven, to advise them to fight once more against their Enemies, assuring them of a notable Victory. The Captains, the next Morning, came to their King, and related to him and the whole Army what they had seen and heard, and that 'twas their opinion to fight courageously, for that God would assist them, seeing he had sent them such a comfortable Message. The Scotch Army upon this confidence, engaged with the Picts, and beat them out of their Country.

## CHAP. LXXIII.

*How the Marquis of Spinola had Intelligence of all the Passages of the Prince of Oranges Army, and of the Town of Breda, then besieged by Spinola.*

**S**Pinola besieged the Town of Breda, but not knowing in what condition the Garrison was, he perswaded a subtile Country-Fellow to carry Butter and Cheese, and other necessary things into the Town. The Fellow pretended that he had narrowly escaped the Guards and Sentinels, and was very welcom to the Soldiers, and to the Governour, in hopes, by his means, to send a Letter to the Prince of Orange. The Country

Fcl3

Fellow at first shewed himself unwilling, because of the danger, but at last suffered himself to be wrought upon by rewards and promises to carry a Letter, which he deliver'd to *Spinola*, who sealed it up, and gave it to the same Country-Fellow to carry to the Prince. The Fellow informed him of all passages, and told him how he had escaped through the Guard. The Prince judged that he could not employ a fitter Man to carry back an answer to the Town, which he undertook to perform for a Sum of Money; but when he had the Princes Answer, he carryed it to the Marquis to peruse, and received from him a good reward. When Prince *Maurice* was dead, *Henry* his Brother succeeded him in his Employment; and when the Marquis could not understand of the Enemies Condition, he sent for his Country Fellow, and caused him to counterfeit a Sickness, which he pretended he had got by travelling in Winter and Frost to serve the Prince of *Orange*. The Countrymans Wife goes to Prince *Henry*, and complains of her Husbands sad condition, desiring him to pay him that stipend which his Brother had promis'd for his former Services. The Prince was well pleased to find the Man that could carry Intelligence to the besieged Town, and willed her to fetch him, promising to pay not only that Money, but much more, if he would serve him as he had served his Brother. After many great promises, the Peasant was brought to the Prince, and charged with a Letter to the Governour of *Breda*, but instead of carrying it to the Town, he brought it to the Marquis; by this means he understood his Enemies purposes and conditions, and knew how to prevent their Designs.

## CHAP. LXXIV.

*How the Duke of Alanson was like to have surprized Mons.*

THE plot was laid in this manner, That a thousand Horse, having with them a thousand Musketeers behind them, should in the night hide themselves in the Woods near to the City to be ready to hasten to the Gates at the first call. About thirty young Soldiers, without Beards, were to be apparelled like Country Girls, with their Weapons privately hid about them: to these some old Soldiers were added, to accompany them, in the garb of Country Clowns, carrying with them Provisions for the Market, for that day was chosen to surprize the City. They were to have a Cart with them, loaden with Country Commodities, which some *Wal-loons* were to drive, the better to procure an entrance without suspicion. The Cart was to be driven to the second Gate, and there to be disordered, by letting fall the Wheel; whilst the Carter was to be busie about his Cart, the disguised Soldiers were to take the first and second Gate, to kill the Watch, and to give a sign to the Ambushes in the Wood to come speedily to their Assistance, which being let into the City, would easily take and keep it for the *French*. But this plot was discovered, and by that means prevented.

## CHAP. LXXV.

*How Prince Maurice endeavour'd to take Antwerp Castle by surprise.*

PRINCE Maurice, without dispute, was one of the most successful Generals of his time; at the Battel of *Newport* he obtained a great Victory over the *Spaniards*, and being bread up amongst Armies and Soldiers, he proved a most wise and subtle Commander. *Antwerp Castle* was attempted by him in this manner; He being at *Breda* with his Army, commanded all the passages of his Camp to be narrowly watched, and secretly drew some Companies of Foot from some Neighbouring Garrisons, putting them under the command of a discreet Colonel, in whom he could confide. The Soldiers knew nothing of his purpose, only the Officers; and that he might the better conceal his March from the Country, he ordered his Men to take off their Orange Colours and change them for Red, such as the King of *Spain's* Soldiers used to wear, and his Waggon's likewise had a *Burgundian Cross*, as *Spinola's*. And as his Soldiers passed through the Country, they were to say, That they belonged to the King of *Spain*, and were marching to *Antwerp* for Provisions. By this disguise and invention a party of a 1000 Foot, and 200 Horse went undiscovered in the dark night to the Walls of *Antwerp Castle*, where they got as far as the Bridge, and were ready to blow open the Gates, had they not bin perceived by the

Vigilancy.

Vigilancy of a *Spanish* old Soldier, named *Andreas Cea*, who gave the Alarm to the Garrison, and prevented their entrance.

## CHAP. LXXVI.

*Of the Battel of Diep, between Henry the Fourth of France, and the Army of the Ligne, commanded by the Duke of Mayenne.*

THE King had in his Army about eight or nine thousand Men. The Duke had twenty five thousand Foot, and eight thousand Horse. the King intrenched himself about three Miles from *Diep*, at a Village called *Arques* with his small number, but he gave such wise Orders, that he secured both his Camp and the Suburbs of the City from the invading Enemy, who, on the 16th. of *September*, 1589. gave a furious assault to the Kings Forces, but were beaten back with great loss. The Duke of *Mayenne* having continued quiet in his Camp three days, gave another Assault, but to as little purpose, only the Regiments of *Colalt* and *Tremblecour* called to the Kings Forces, that they would be of their side, at which offer they were received within the Trenches, and they promised to serve the King faithfully, if they might have any assurance of their pay, which was promised by the King; but whilst this brave Prince was busily employed in looking to every quarter, these Treacherous Villains turned their Weapons against them who had taken them in, let in more of the Dukes Forces.

Forces into that part of the Camp; so that if the Duke, in that consternation that the Kings Army was then in by the unexpected Treachery, had speedily fallen upon them, and seconded with all his Forces these two Regiments, he had undoubtedly carryed and mastered the Trenches; but whilst the Duke delayed, the Count de Castillon, the Duke of Montpensier and La Nove, excellent Commanders of the Kings Army, ran with their Men to assist the Kings discouraged party, and charged the Enemy within the Trenches so briskly, that they were forced to fly out, and leave that great advantage they had gained by a Stratagem. After this good success, the King with his small party gave so many Alarms to the Dukes Camp, that he found himself with his great Army besieged by the Kings small numbers, and reduced to many Wants, and to the necessity at last, of departing to a more secure and commodious Neighbourhood.

## CHAP. LXXVII.

### *Of the Famous Battel. of Jury, between Henry the 4th. and the Duke of Mayenne.*

**T**HE Duke designed to relieve the Town of Dreux, besieged by the Kings Army, which as soon as the Duke began to draw near, they were ordered to retreat, as if they had been in fear. This dissimulation so encouraged the Commanders of the Dukes Army, that they would not be quiet, till they had forced him against

against his Judgement to a Battel. Both Armies were drawn up in Battalia in an even Plain, near the Tillage of *Jury*. The Kings Army had about ten thousand Foot, and three thousand Horse, drawn up in this manner; The King appeared first at the Head of a Squadron of six hundred Horse, most Lords and Gentlemen, which was flanked on the right hand with a Battalion of two Regiments of *Switzers*, and on the left by two other Regiments of the same Country. These Battalions were followed by the Regiments of the Guards, and three other Regiments. The Duke of *Montpensier* marched next on the Left, with a Squadron of six hundred Horse, between two Regiments of *Germany* and *Switzerland*, seconded by two other Bodies of Foot, chosen out of the *French* Infantry. The Marshal d'*Aumont* closed up the Left Wing with three hundred Horse, and two Regiments of *French* Infantry at his sides, and two Troops before him of Light Horsemen, commanded by the great Prior, and by *Guiry Marechal de Camp*. These were assisted on the Right by the Baron of *Biron*, who had the charge to protect four Canons and some Field Pieces: on the other side marched the Marshal of *Biron* with another Squadron of Horse, between two Regiments of *French* Foot, next to the Regiments of Guards, but a little behind, that they might be as a reserve to that Body, which was commanded by the King in person: next to them, on the right hand, shewing the appearance of a Crescent, was a Squadron of *German* Horse, flanked by two small Bodies of *French* Infantry, led by the Count *Scomberg*. This excellent order of the Kings Army, together with the Judicious management of the Artillery

Artillery by the Master of the Ordinance, contributed much to the Victory ; for the several Bodies, into which the Kings Army was drawn up, found a means to inclose in a body of *Dutch* Horse, whom they charged so furiously on the Flanks, that they were routed, and forced to fall back upon the Infantry of the *Ligne*. The King himself acted the part of an excellent Commander and a stout Soldier ; for when he was to encounter with eighteen hundred Lances, commanded by the Duke of *Mayenne*, he, with his Pistol and Sword in his hand, was engaged in the midst of that great Squadron, and totally defeated it with a small party that followed him close by his sides. The King took all the Bag and Baggage, Canon and Ammunition. By this Battel *Henry* the 4<sup>th</sup>. secured the Crown of *France* to him and his Posterity of the House of *Bourbon*, for the *Ligenrs* were never after in power to meet him in a Field.

A

---



---

A  
DISCOURSE  
OF  
ENGINES  
USED IN  
WAR.

There is no art nor knowledge where the Wit of Man hath been more active than in that of War, and found out more wonderful and strange Inventions, both for Offence and Defence, to enable him to perform things beyond his ordinary and natural Strength. Either the greatness of the Rewards, and advantage proposed, or the necessities unto which he hath bin reduced, or the importance of War, upon which depend oftentimes the happiness or misery of whole Kingdoms and Nations, have sharpened his contriving Faculty in this, more than in other concerns of this humane Life.

The

The Romans, for the encrease of their Empire, and the subduing many Warlike Nations, overcame them by the politick order of their Militia, and took their strongest Castles by Inventions of the Wits of that Age. At the first besieging of a Town, they were wont to fortifie themselves in their Trenches, to prevent all sudden Surprizes or Sallies; then did they encompass in the Town with Forts, Lines and Trenches to hinder all Supplies and Provisions from going to the besieged. Afterwards they made use of their Engines to force them to yield. They raised a high Mount with Earth and Faggots, higher than the Walls, to fight with greater advantage; this was called *Agger*. They used also Towers of Wood, which they could draw so near the Enemies Walls, that they often leaped from them into the City. *Lucanus* mentions them both at the Siege of *Marseilles* by *Cæsar*, Lib. 3. *Stellatis Axibus Agger erigitur, geminasque equantes menia Turres accipit: hæ nullo fixerunt robore terram, sed per iter longam repere latenti.*

Their *Balistæ* were Inventions to cast great Stones of a vast bigness, or a number of Arrows with that strength, that nothing could well stand before them; for the weight of the stones cast violently upon the Enemy, did crush and beat them to pieces, and the showers of Arrows flying out of this Engine with an incredible Violence, did great execution. The same Poet describes it,

— *Tenso Ballistæ turbine rapta  
Haud, unam contenta latus transire, quiescit:  
Sed pandens perque arma viam, perque ossa, relicta  
Morte fugit: superest telo post vulnera cursus.  
At Saxum quoties ingenti ponderis istu*

Ex-

*Excutitur, qualis rupes quam vertice montis  
Abscidit impulsu ventorum adjuta vetustas,  
Frangit cuncta ruens: nec tantum corpora pressa  
Examinat: totos cum sanguine dissipat artus.*

*Testudo* was another Invention to secure their way to the Walls, or to their Towers, from the Enemies Arrows. It was made like a Penthouse, supported with Beams, and covered over with raw Hides; but this word is often taken for a continued number of Bucklers, held up together by the Soldiers, when they were marching under the Enemies Walls, by which they did protect their Heads from great Stones, and other weighty things cast upon them. The Romans *Vinea* was another Engine used by them, when they were to undermine, or work at the foot of the Walls, to overthrow them. It was made of Hurdles and Planks, and sometimes covered over with raw hides, to prevent burning. The Soldiers were secured under it from the Enemies Darts and violent endeavours. But when the Army gave a general Assault, they had another Invention, named *Musculi*, to cover their Bodies in the approach. *Pluteus*, was another Engine, not much unlike to a *Vinea*. These differing names are borrowed from the shapes and forms which these several Contrivances had. Now for offence, besides the fore-named *Balistæ*, they made use of an Engine called *Onager*, to cast Stones with great violence, and another Invention named *Scorpio*, to sling Darts against the Enemies, and *Falces Murales*, to pull down the Stones of a Wall, and level the breach for a more commodious Assault. But there was no Instrument more useful to them than their *Aries*, so named, because

## 156 *The Stratagems of War.*

cause it was headed with Iron, not much unlike to Rams Horns ; it was a great beam, weighed and lifted up, and forced against the Walls of a Town, sometimes by the strength of the Soldiers with Ropes and Powlies, sometimes by another Contrivance. This *Aries* did commonly batter down the strongest and thickest Walls of Morter and Stone ; therefore *Cæsar* observes that, some of the Cities of the *Gauls* were builded with Beams across, to strengthen them against the violent impulse of this great and strong Engine, of which the Poet speaks,

———*Nunc Aries suspensio fatior istu  
Incussus densi compagem solve muri  
Tentat, & impositis unum subducere saxis.*

Most of these Engines, and others, used by the ancient *Greeks* and *Romans* in their Wars, are now out of date, because our Warfare in these days is altogether another thing, by reason of the Invention of Gunpowder and Guns. And the Wit of Man hath proceeded further than ever they did to find out strange Instruments of a greater strength, and more powerful operation. I shall here give a brief account of the most modern Engines and Inventions now commonly us'd in War.

### *Of Great Guns.*

Since the Invention of Gunpowder, Guns have been found to be more serviceable, and easie to command and procure, then other Weapons before used in their stead. And for Great Guns, they strike a Terror into the Enemy with their

## *The Stratagems of War.*

157

their dreadful noise and thundering, and are more commodious than either the *Romans* Ram, or their *Balista*, for to do execution upon Men or Walls ; but though it is of great use, yet there is this defect in Great Guns, that they cannot be so easily managed, as to be brought to play so soon and so speedily as sudden occasions may require. Their Fury is to be avoided by the nimbleness of the Foot, or by the Galloping of the Horse. If therefore it were possible to find out such an Invention as may add to the strength of a Great Gun the swiftness of a Horse, I conceive there is no body of Horse or Foot could be able to resist a small party furnished therewith. Such things may be found out as may be of great use in time of need. But there are several sorts of great Guns : these are the ordinary Names, with their usual proportions.

The Canon is about 11, 12, or 13 foot long, of 9, 10, 11, 12, 13 or 14 Inches Diameter. If the Shot weighs 110 pounds, there is required of Corn Powder 76 Pounds for to charge the Gun, and so proportionable of the bigger or lesser Cannon.

The Dragon of Double Culvering weighs 14000 pounds, and shoots 357 paces level, 4252 paces at random

The whole Culvering weighs 8500 pounds, is about 13 Foot and a quarter long, shoots level 415 paces, and at random about 3700 paces.

The Demi-Culvering weighs 4600 pounds, is about 9 or 10 Foot long, shoots level 235 paces.

The Saker Ordinary is about 9 Foot and a half long, weighs 2650 pounds, shoots level 183 paces.

The Sakeret, or *Minion*, is about 8 Foot long.  
The

The Fawlcron weighs 1500 pounds, shoots level 889 paces.

The Fawlcronet weighs 850 pounds, shoots level 107 paces.

The Rabinet weighs 425 pounds, shoots level 82 paces, and at random 669 paces.

The Base weighs 300 pounds, shoots level 63 paces, and at random 525 paces.

It is observable, that these several kinds of Great Ordinance are sometimes of a less or greater weight, and according to the force of the Metal, they will bear a greater or less charge. And that they convey their Bullets farther or nearer, according to the charge of the Powder, and the weight of the Bullet. Besides these former Legitimate Ordinance, there are some named Bastard Pieces; as the *Serpentine*, or bastard Culverin.

Lee *Aspike*, or bastard Demi Culverin.

The *Pellican*, or bastard quarter Culverin.

The Bastard Fawlcron.

The bastard Rabinet.

The Basilisk.

The *Aspike*, &c.

And it is observable, that when any of these Guns grow hot, they cannot bear so great a Charge, as when cold. They are to be cooled with Vinegar and Water mixed, or with Wine Lees, or Urine and Water.

### *Of the Petard.*

The *Petard* is an Invention to blow open Gates, Ports or Portcullises. It is made of Brass, of the fashion of a Leathern Bucket, and is usually hung up by a Ring to the Gate, and skrewed to

to it with a Fork. It is filled with Powder, and when it breaks, it tears all to pieces that which is near it.

### *Of the Granado.*

This is a most dreadful Engine, commonly used to break down Walls, Houses, and to fire Cities. It doth execution where the Canon can never reach. It is commonly made of Brass, or Pot Metal, and sometimes of Canvas, to set fire upon Houses and Towns. They of Brass are to be filled with strong Powder, with a snout at one end, and a hole at the other, where there must be a slow burning powder, made of Canon Powder, beaten and moistned with the Oyl of *Peter*, mingled with Charcole. They are cast into the Air out of a Morter-piece into the Enemies Cities or Castles; and they are sometimes of that Weight, that they will brake through the Tiling and Heads of Houses; and when they break, cast down the Walls on both sides, and set all a fire that is combustible. These are sometimes named *Bomby*.

The Hand Granado is round, about the bigness of an ordinary great Bullet, hollow and full of Powder, used to be cast among the Enemies Horse, or into Trenches, Forts or Ships, to destroy them.

### *Of Fire-Balls.*

Fire-balls are very useful in the Siege, or taking of Towns. They must be shot out of Morterpieces or Canon. They are to be made in this manner; Take Goose-Grease or Swines Grease, one part of Tar, half a quarter as much of pitch, two parts of strong Brandy, half a



quarter of Linseed Oil, one part of Verdigrease a quarter part of Wax, half a quarter of Groom, a quarter part of Salt-Peter, and Meal one part; all this must be stirred together over a slow Fire till it comes to be well mixed, then cast in some Tow and Linen Rags, which must be rowled in small beaten powder, and then round about, four, five or six long and sharp Irons, joined together in the middle: when the Ball is as big as you design it, you must bind it fast with Wire or Packthread, and bore two, or four, or more holes through and through, which must be filled with good bruised Powder that may easily take Fire. Some Fire-balls are made round, without any such sharp Irons sticking; but if planks or boards are to be fired, those with Irons are the most proper, for execution; for where they fall, they stick so fast, that they are not easily to be removed, till the place be consumed where they unhappily light.

### *Of Stinkpots.*

At the boarding of Ships, the Enemy throws not only Hand-Granado's and Fire-balls, but there is a new Invention, certain Pots filled with most odious and noisom stuff, together with Wildfire and other Ingredients, which are cast into the port-holes of Ships, or into the Steerage or Fore-Castle, which, when they break, grievously wound the Defendants, and fill the Room with such strange Fumes, that scarce any person can suffer them.

There are other earthen or glass Bottles filled with a Composition made of Serpentine Powder, Hogs Grease, Brimstone, Salt-peter, Brandy, Pitch and fine Powder; when these Bottles are

cast amongst the Enemies Foot or Horse in Streets or Lanes, they will infallibly disorder and break their Ranks.

### *Of a Frame of Muskets.*

This Invention is very good to defend a Breach, or to flank a Body of Pikes. The Frame is made of Planks, with three or four stories high, having so many Tire of Muskets, and a small Spout of Brass to go from one touch-hole to another; so that as soon as the Train is fired, the whole Tyre must needs go off. When Men grow scarce in a Siege, through Sickness, or otherwise, this Invention may be of great use, for it may be so made, that two or three Men may manage forty or fifty Muskets at a Bridge, or a breach, and with greater safety to their own Persons, that may be covered behind out of danger of the Invading Enemy's small shot.

### *Of the Warlike Flail.*

It is made as our threshing Instruments, but a little bigger, and with Iron points at the great end, which, when an Enemy scales the Walls, or enters a breach, must needs be of great use to defend, and beat him back.

### *Of several Inventions to ruine and trouble the Horse.*

The Turn-pike is used in narrow passages, and is made of a round piece of Timber about 8 or 10 foot long, sometimes more, full of sharp Irons to stop the Horse.

The Calthrop is a round piece of Wood, full of sharp Irons, used also for the same purpose.

The Crawfeet is a Swedish Invention, made of

four Irons very sharp, joined in the middle ; so that which way soever it is cast, there is one about three Inches long, or more, that stands upright, to run into the Feet of Horse or Man that shall offer to pass that way.

*Of an Engine named the Soulcifs.*

It is a Tun full of Horse-Dung and Sand, but so great, that a Horseman may ride behind undiscovered. It is bound with Iron Hoops, and commonly used to shelter such as are to relieve dangerous Guards, or to go within reach of the Enemies Canon or Muskets ; and therefore is rowled betwen them and the Enemy with many hands.

Many other Inventions there are used by the subtil Wits of this Age in War ; in the defence of Cities, in the overthrowing of Walls, in the relieving of Towns, in the preventing of Supplies, in marching speedily over great Rivers, in the defending of Harbours, and other passages relating to the management of War ; but they are reserved for their knowledge, who are to be Ingeniers in an Army, or besieged Town.

---

FINIS.